

# **Technical Commission Report**

# Q1 of 2024

Author: Technical Commission

Document type	Report
Subject of Report	Activity of the TEC Commission for the Q1 2024
Document version	1.0
Date	March 27 <sup>th</sup> , 2023

# Contents

Contents	2		
Scope of the report			
Summary	3		
Internal Organization	3		
Endorsements	5		
1. Chess Online Pairing Program	5		
2. Video Assisted Refereeing	6		
3. Clono Electronic Scoresheet	7		
4. Chess NoteR	8		
Exercises in Tie-Breaking	9		
Changing in C.04 Regulations	10		
Projects in progress	11		
Tournament Portal Specifications	11		
Team Pairing System	12		
DGT Live Improvements	12		
ANNEXES	13		

# Scope of the report

This report represents a detailed presentation of the activity of the Technical Commission [TEC] of FIDE in Q1 2024.

# **Summary**

In the first three months of 2024, TEC continued the projects and activities started in2023. We have two types of activities:

- Recurrent ones, such as endorsement processes or assisting other people in technical aspects of chess.
- Developing efforts, consisting in improving the regulations, as well as developing new projects.

# **Internal Organization**

TEC commission has 23 members, including chairman, honorary chairman, secretary, councilors and members.

No.	Position	Surname	Name	Federation	Email
1	Chair	Georgescu	Tiberiu	Romania	tiberiu.georgescu@frsah.ro
	Honorary				
2	Chair	Filipowicz	Andrzej	Poland	filipowicz38@gmail.com
3	Secretary	Du Toit	Hendrik	South Africa	hendrik@brightedge.co.za
4	Councilor	Ricca	Roberto	Italy	ricca@rrweb.org
5	Councilor	Brustman	Agnieszka	Poland	abrustman@gmail.com
6	Councilor	Pahlevanzadeh	Mehrdad	Iran	pahlevanzadeh@outlook.com
7	Councilor	Al Taher	Sultan Ali	UAE	sultahir77@hotmail.com
8	Member	Akkour	Abdelfattah	Morocco	akkour@gmail.com
9	Member	Oen	Grant	USA	grant@charlottechesscenter.org
10	Member	Ni	Hua	China	nihua531@hotmail.com
11	Member	Nicula	Dinu-Ioan	Romania	nicudin004@yahoo.com
12	Member	Prohorov	Olexandr	Ukraine	prohorov@chessclub.lviv.ua
13	Member	Burstein	Almog	Israel	almogbu@walla.com
14	Member	Keles	Askin	Turkey	askinkeles@gmail.com
15	Member	Arasu	В.	India	arasub@gmail.com
16	Member	Milvang	Otto	Norway	sjakk@milvang.no
17	Member	Mushaninga	Fungirayiini	Zimbabwe	fungimush1999@gmail.com
18	Member	Held	Mario	Italy	mario.hev@gmail.com
19	Member	Nepando	Jolly	Namibia	jollynepando@gmail.com
20	Member	Karali	Tania	Greece	tkarali@windowslive.com
22	Member	Smith	Russell	Trinidad & Tobago	seepoysmith@yahoo.com
23	Member	Abramov	Sergey	Russia	chessokcom@gmail.com

No.	Department	Head of department	Workgroups			
1	SPP	Roberto Ricca	Pairing regulations Tie-break regulations			
			Software for SPP			
			Board, Pieces & Clocks			
2	Critical TEC	Mario Held	Venue Requirements Commission			
			IntWorkgroupsIntPairing regulationsCaPairing regulationsSoftware for SPPBoard, Pieces & ClocksVenue Requirements CommissionBroadcast technologiesDigitalization - externDigitalization - internal FIDE procedures (assisting other commissions)Strategic DigitalizationDeveloping advanced technologies for capturing games by active collaboration with companies (scoresheets, e-boards, gadgets with AI)Ensuring compatibility across technologies and e-platformsManagement Board Management and Procedure Workgroup Communication & Promotion 			
		Muchaninga	Digitalization - extern			
3	Support TEC	Fungirayiini	Digitalization - internal FIDE procedures (assisting other commissions)			
	Development TEC		Strategic Digitalization			
4		TEC Arasu B.	Developing advanced technologies for capturing games by active collaboration with companies (scoresheets, e-boards, gadgets with AI)			
			Ensuring compatibility across technologies and e-platforms			
5	Managamant	Chairman &	Management Board			
5	Management	Secretary	Management and Procedure Workgroup			
6	Marketing &	Tania Karali	Communication & Promotion			
U	communication	i ailla Nai all	Website & Social Media			

The **Management Board** is composed of:

- Chairman Tiberiu Georgescu
- Honorary Chair Andrzej Filipowicz
- Secretary Hendrik du Toit
- Councillors Roberto Ricca, Agnieszka Brustman, Mehrdad Pahlevanzadeh, Sultan Ali Al Taher
- Head of Departments Roberto Ricca, Mario Held, Mushaninga Fungirayiini, Arasu
   B., Dinu Ioan-Nicula (as head of Management and Procedure Workgroup) and
   Tania Karali.

# **Endorsements**

While doing endorsement for new products, we identified some new challenges posed by innovative chess software solutions (or hardware solutions that include software).

These solutions bring to the table new dimensions which can help improving the chess community. However, due to the innovative character of this products, we observed that often the FIDE handbook doesn't include all the necessary amendments.

Below are described the main efforts regarding endorsement processes performed by TEC in Q1 2024.

#### 1. Chess Online Pairing Program

The Chess Online Pairing Program (COPP) underwent evaluation for FIDE endorsement, with version 7.7 and build number 1230. The application process commenced on July 5, 2023, and a subsequent submission on December 8th refined identification details. COPP operates as an online service, hosted on the https://chessresults.ru/en1 site, and underwent adaptation for FIDE endorsement via a virtual machine provided to the endorsement committee (PICOTE). This virtual machine, identical to the main server, serves as a reference for testing and demonstration purposes.

COPP aligns with FIDE requirements for managing Swiss tournaments. It offers an English language interface, supports the FIDE Data Exchange Format for file import/export, and provides free pairing checker (FPC) and simulated tournament generator (RTG) functionalities. These services, crucial for tournament management, enhance COPP's suitability for FIDE endorsement.

The evaluation of COPP was conducted according to Appendix A of Section C.04, focusing on adherence to FIDE regulations for tournament management software. COPP's FIDE mode, essential for endorsement, encompasses various functionalities outlined in the Verification Check-List (VCL). The program must ensure correct behaviour in pairingrelated services, adhere strictly to pairing rules, and implement FIDE-endorsed acceleration systems, among other requirements.

Despite minor weaknesses highlighted during evaluation, such as potential risks associated with adjusting scoring systems post-import, COPP demonstrates overall compliance with FIDE standards. The evaluation acknowledges COPP's efforts to meet FIDE's stringent criteria, recommending minor improvements to enhance user understanding and experience.

In conclusion, COPP version 7.7 with build number 1230 merits FIDE endorsement. The comprehensive evaluation report, compiled by Roberto Ricca, recommends COPP's addition to the FIDE Endorsed Programs list pending approval by the Technical Commission. This endorsement will validate COPP's suitability for facilitating Swiss tournaments in accordance with FIDE regulations.

#### 2. Video Assisted Refereeing

The document "Video Assisted Refereeing (VAR) in Chess" provides an in-depth examination of the integration and implications of VAR technology within the realm of chess. It begins with an introduction highlighting the transformative potential of VAR in enhancing fairness, accuracy, and integrity in chess, akin to its impact in physical sports. The document elaborates on the unique challenges faced in implementing VAR in chess due to the decentralized system of arbiters and the nature of the disputes that arise during games.

#### Key points covered include:

Purpose and Vision: Emphasizing the ambition to integrate technological advancements for promoting fair play and precision in chess, aiming to mitigate human observational errors that could influence game outcomes.

Challenges in Chess: Outlining the distinct challenges in applying VAR in chess, such as move accuracy verification, time control management, fair play enforcement, and handling technical issues.

Expectations for Implementation: Acknowledging that while VAR is a powerful tool, it is not a panacea for all issues in chess tournaments. It aims to solve touch-move disputes, support arbiters in decision-making, and necessitates a gradual, phased enhancement post-initial implementation.

VAR Technology Overview: Describes the technical setup involving mobile phone cameras for capturing games, a central processing system for data aggregation, and specialized software for analysis and decision support.

Ethical Considerations: Stresses the importance of maintaining the game's integrity, transparency in VAR's application, consistency, and the balance between technology use and human oversight.

Player Rights and Responsibilities: Discusses the framework for players' rights to appeal and their responsibility to uphold sportsmanship in light of VAR decisions. Protocols for VAR Usage: Explains the necessity for a controlled VAR system by the tournament organizer, highlighting the advantages in terms of integrity, bias avoidance, and regulatory compliance.

Arbiter Training on VAR: Outlines the objectives and content of training programs for arbiters, focusing on understanding and efficiently operating the VAR system within ethical guidelines.

The document also suggests amendments to chess regulations to accommodate VAR technology legally, emphasizing a respectful balance between innovation and the game's traditional values. It concludes with recommendations for gradual implementation, further development, and the necessity for comprehensive training and awareness among all tournament stakeholders.

#### 3. Clono Electronic Scoresheet

In September 2021, the Technical Commission appointed experienced testers, including Agnieszka Brustman, Almog Burstein, and Sandeep Singh, to assess the Clono electronic scoresheet. Overall, testers provided positive feedback but highlighted concerns. They emphasized the need for organizers to provide tablets to players to prevent cheating, advocated for the optional use of Clono, and noted challenges for older players. Sandeep Singh raised alarms about potential cheating through replicated Clono apps. The Commission faces unresolved issues such as formatting Clono printouts for easy transfer to PGN, creating paper protocols for game results, and addressing emerging challenges in anti-cheating measures.

However, as new electronic scoresheet was endorsed, we identified a series of necessary changes in regulations that need to be addressed.

#### 4. Chess NoteR

The Technical Commission's evaluation report proposed and approved by FIDE Council in February 2024 scrutinizes ChessNoteR devices by "Black Mirror Studio" for FIDE tournaments. Testing two models, ChessNoteR N6 and N9, it assesses functionality, compliance with FIDE regulations, and practical usage. Urgent actions, like device approval, are recommended, along with enhancements for tournament management and foul play prevention. The report emphasizes compliance with FIDE rules, suggesting features for accuracy and convenience. It concludes with controlled use test cases and references. Overall, it offers insights into the devices' suitability for official tournaments and proposes measures for their effective implementation.

After the decision was made by FIDE Council, TEC received several concerns regarding regulation interpretation. Both the vendor, as well as other persons were interested to know if the players can bring their own electronic scoresheet to be used in official tournaments and in which conditions. TEC came back with an official answer, but we are working on improving the Handbook on the use of electronic scoresheets conditions.

# **Exercises in Tie-Breaking**

In August 2023, the FIDE Council endorsed new guidelines for playoffs and tiebreaks, introducing significant modifications, including the removal of the virtual opponent concept and a comprehensive overhaul in handling unplayed games and matches. The document produced by IA Mario Held is designed to facilitate understanding of the updated rules by providing practical examples for applying them across different tiebreak systems, serving not merely as reading material but as a practical exercise toolkit to enhance rule familiarity after initial study. In real-world tournaments, tie-breaks are resolved through a series of steps; for ease of explanation, this text treats each system as the primary method of tie-breaking.

The suggested approach for readers is to tackle the exercises sequentially as they appear, armed with the tournament crosstable and the official FIDE technical regulations on playoffs and tiebreaks (C.07), cited throughout the text in brackets ("[]"). Attempting the exercises independently before reviewing the solutions and referenced rules is recommended. This guide is structured to be approachable for novices familiar with the basic concepts it depicts, introduced in an incremental fashion, while also offering value to more advanced readers through a recommendation to review even the most basic scenarios to not overlook potentially insightful details.

Lastly, it's noted that the C.07 regulations encompass all chess tie-breaks, despite some being of debatable merit, leaving it to event organizers to select or potentially create new tie-break methods

# **Changing in C.04 Regulations**

The document outlines changes to chess's Swiss system rules, focusing on bye allocations and simplifying the pairing process. Notably, a player cannot receive a pairing-allocated bye after a forfeit win or equivalent scenario.

The FIDE (Dutch) system's modifications include the removal of "collapsed" score groups and adjustments in wording for clarity. New criteria, such as minimizing the assignee of the pairing-allocated bye's score, have been introduced to ensure fairness.

These changes streamline the system, making rules clearer and aligning the bye allocation process with other systems, reflecting a move towards a more simplified and equitable approach in chess tournament organization.

# **Projects in progress**

#### **Tournament Portal Specifications**

The document titled "Tournament Entry Portal - Functional Specification" details the planning and development of an online system to manage entries into FIDE (The International Chess Federation) tournaments. Authored by IA Hendrik du Toit in November 2023, the report outlines the project's aims to transition from manual to automated systems for registering chess players and managing events. The portal intends to simplify the entry process for players, streamline registration for various tournament formats, and enhance event management features, including accommodation and travel arrangements.

Challenges identified include the inefficiency of current manual processes, the lack of a centralized registration system, and the need for standardized processes across FIDE's global tournaments. The document lists primary objectives, such as eliminating manual systems, developing an official registration platform, and optimizing registration processes to improve efficiency and standardize procedures.

Key requirements for the portal include comprehensive functionality for tournament management, integration with existing FIDE systems, and ensuring user accessibility and data security. The document also addresses contact information management, manual contract inefficiencies, and outlines roles and responsibilities across different FIDE commissions and technical teams.

Additionally, the specification covers the scope of the project, expected impacts, stakeholder involvement, technical considerations, testing and deployment strategies, support and training needs, future enhancements, and a phased approach for development. It concludes with a list of potential third-party vendors and proposals from managed events companies, suggesting a comprehensive and collaborative effort to bring the project to fruition before the Chess Olympiad in 2024.

# **Team Pairing System**

The SPP department, with Roberto Ricca in charge, presented to ARB, QC and Rules commissions the key aspects of Team Pairing systems that needs to be improved.

The discussion around the Swiss Team Pairing System involves focusing on refining and approving the system for better clarity, effectiveness, and fairness in chess tournaments. Key points include concerns over the Handbook style guide, differences from Olympiad rules, and the lack of examples for tournament pairings.

There's an urgent call to finalize changes to the FIDE (Dutch) System rules, prioritized over the Team Pairing rules due to scheduling constraints for implementation. Feedback highlights the document's readability for software developers versus arbiters, the method for top-down pairings, and the arbiter's discretion in pairing anomalies. There's also a debate over the calculation of the Team Points Number (TPN), with suggestions for predefined methods to prevent manipulation by organizers.

Some advocate for a uniform method to calculate average ratings, while others see value in allowing organizers to choose from predefined options or even devise new ones to suit specific tournament needs, emphasizing flexibility and acknowledging the variety of existing practices and software capabilities.

# **DGT Live Improvements**

Our efforts consist in identifying critical bugs and usability issues encountered in the digital chess platform LC2, compared to its predecessor, LC1.4 and address to the DGT company representative to solve them. Key problems include unexplained results appearing in PGN files without corresponding entries in the program's logs, mismatches between moves listed in 'History' and 'Game' tabs, and an unresponsive 'Events' tab despite evident game issues.

The usability section emphasizes difficulties in managing and monitoring 50+ chessboards connected to a single PC, such as non-sortable columns, non-updatable diagrams, and lack of immediate clock and battery status indicators. Further issues include the cumbersome process for setting game results, high memory consumption, and the absence of a delay feature for game broadcasts, which compromises fairness and compatibility with platforms like Chess.com.

The feedback suggests improvements like reintroducing icons for board monitoring, streamlining game correction processes, and implementing a reliable delay feature to enhance user experience and operational efficiency.

# ANNEXES

Endorsement Report of Chess Online Pairing Program

**Exercises in Tie-Breaking** 

Changing in C.04 Regulations

**Tournament Portal Specifications** 

# CHESS ONLINE PAIRING PROGRAM (COPP) OFFICIAL REPORT

The FE-1 application of the Chess Online Pairings Program (COPP, from now on) was submitted on July 5, 2023, for the version 7.7. At that time there was no other visible sub-number accompanying the product to allow its identification, nor was it retrievable. An updated application was then submitted on December 8<sup>th</sup>, and this time a build number (1230) was mentioned that would identify the product described here.

COPP (*this description was prepared by the COPP's author*) is built into the <u>https://chessresults.ru/en</u><sup>1</sup> site and operates as an online service. In order to pass the FIDE endorsement process, COPP has been copied to a virtual machine which is similar with the main site/server.

Such a virtual machine has been delivered to the *people in charge of the endorsement* (PICOTE, from now on) and is stored on the PICOTE's machine. Thus, in addition to being a very precise reference to what was tested by the PICOTE (and the source of the corresponding recommendation), it can also be shown to FIDE personnel who may be interested.

The evaluation of COPP was done using the virtual machine and following what is written in Appendix A of Section C.04 (Endorsement of a software program), and in particular what is written in Article A.2 (reported below), which is a sort of driver for the whole endorsement process.

*Note.* All references to the Pairing Systems and Programs Commission, or SPPC, should be read as referring to the Technical Commission, or TEC, which has assumed the functions of the former SPPC.

Each author of a program that helps to manage a chess tournament can apply for the FIDE endorsement by submitting an FE-1 form (see Annex-1).

For an endorsement application to be considered, the program must be able to manage Swiss tournaments using the FIDE (Dutch) System (see C.04.3) or any other pairing systems approved by FIDE (see C.04.4.1-3). The endorsement is given for the specific pairing systems (one or more).

Any program asking for endorsement should provide (explicitly or implicitly) a **FIDE mode**, which should offer all the functionalities and services required by FIDE for a tournament-managing program to be endorsable *(see below)*.

The program is to be endorsed in the FIDE mode. Moreover, it must provide the following services:

- an English language interface
- an English language interface
- the capability to import and export files coded in the FIDE Data Exchange Format *(see A.3.1 and Annex-4)*
- the public availability of a (free) pairings checker (FPC see A.4)
- the public availability of a (free) generator of simulated tournaments (RTG, see A.5), unless exempted by

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Later amended in <u>https://chessresults.ru/en/copp</u>, which is the official Internet address of the program to be endorsed.

the System of Pairings and Programs Commission (SPPC)

- the possibility to be checked in a controlled environment
- the compliance with all the requirements presented in the Verification Check List (see Annex-4)

The applicant should consider that merely complying with all the aforementioned requirements is not enough to receive a FIDE endorsement.

The FIDE mode may also offer additional services or functionalities, provided that they are not explicitly prohibited by FIDE, on condition that those services and functionalities may not cause pairing mishaps for FIDE mode users.

If, during the period of validity of the endorsement (see A.8), a breach of the above conditions is reported to the SPPC, and verified by the Commission, the endorsement may be immediately suspended (pending further investigation) or permanently revoked. In the latter case, the program reverts to the status of a new program to endorse.

#### Let us examine COPP point-by-point.

Each author of a program that helps to	The FE-1 application was sent on July 5 <sup>th</sup> , 2023 and resent on
manage a chess tournament can apply	December 8 <sup>th</sup>
for the FIDE endorsement by	
submitting an FE-1 form (see Annex-1).	
For an endorsement application to be	The endorsement request is for the FIDE (Dutch) System.
considered, the program must be able to	
manage Swiss tournaments using the	
FIDE (Dutch) System (see $C.04.3$ ) or	
any other pairing systems approved by	
FIDE (see $C.04.4.1-3$ ). The	
endorsement is given for the specific	
pairing systems (one or more).	
Any program asking for endorsement	The FIDE mode is automatically provided at the creation of a
should provide (explicitly or implicitly)	tournament.
the functionalities and services required	For more details see VCL 01
by FIDE for a tournament-managing	
program to be endorsable (see below)	
The program is to be endorsed in the	
FIDE mode.	
Moreover, it must provide the following	Since the site is mainly used by Russians Russian is its main
services:	language However for the solve of support the most important
• an English language interface	language. However, for the sake of support, the most important
	parts have been translated into English and, starting from the
	main page ( <u>https://chessresults.ru/en/copp</u> ) and going down, it
	can be efficiently used by English reading people, although here
	and there some Cyrillic words appear
	The event events appear.
	The overall experience can be further improved by using the
	browser feature that automatically translates web pages from
	Russian to English.
	COPP manual ( <u>https://chessresults.ru/en/docs/guide</u> ) is well
	prepared, and everything that should be documented for
	somebody to use COPP is satisfactorily described in plenty of
	detail
• the capability to import and export files goded in the FIDE Date	Import/export mostly work as requested (more details later).
Exchange Format (see 131 and	
Anner-4)	
• the capability to import and export files coded in the FIDE Data Exchange Format (see A.3.1 and Annex-4)	<ul> <li>main page (<u>https://chessresults.ru/en/copp</u>) and going down, it can be efficiently used by English reading people, although here and there some Cyrillic words appear.</li> <li>The overall experience can be further improved by using the browser feature that automatically translates web pages from Russian to English.</li> <li>COPP manual (<u>https://chessresults.ru/en/docs/guide</u>) is well prepared, and everything that should be documented for somebody to use COPP is satisfactorily described in plenty of detail.</li> <li>Import/export mostly work as requested (<i>more details later</i>).</li> </ul>

<ul> <li>the public availability of a (free) pairings checker (FPC - see A.4)</li> <li>the public availability of a (free) generator of simulated tournaments (RTG, see A.5), unless exempted by the System of Pairings and Programs Commission (SPPC)</li> </ul>	As COPP uses the JaVaFo pairing engine <i>(more details later)</i> , these services are provided through JaVaFo.
• the possibility to be checked in a controlled environment	Since the program runs on a website, it is the antithesis of a controlled environment. However, as mentioned above, a virtual machine (with a server installation) was provided and tests could be run on it with the Internet switched off.
• the compliance with all the requirements presented in the Verification Check List (see Annex-4)	The verification check-list will be thoroughly commented later.
The FIDE mode may also offer additional services or functionalities, provided that they are not explicitly prohibited by FIDE, on condition that those services and functionalities may not cause pairing mishaps for FIDE mode users.	COPP includes the ability to define custom accelerated systems, manual introduction or modification of pairings, extensive customization of non-standard scoring systems, and forbidden pairings (more details later).

# Verification Check-List (VCL)

01	the FIDE mode must be the default operating mode of the software	When a new tournament is created, it is created in FIDE mode. After being warned that they cannot come back to FIDE mode after the first round has been paired, users can switch to a Custom mode.
02	it ought to be possible to enter the FIDE mode by a standard installation of the tournament manager, as well as by a standard invocation of the program	This is properly dealt with <i>(see VCL.01)</i> . This item can be deemed inapplicable, the reason being that the program runs on a website, so the only possible starting action is the creation of a new tournament.
03	the default pairing system activated by a standard invocation must be the one for which the program is endorsed and it must be clearly specified - however, if the program is endorsed for more than one pairing system, the standard invocation should activate one of the systems for which the program is endorsed	By default, tournaments are created for the FIDE (Dutch) System, called "Swiss (Dutch)". No other pairing system can be used while in FIDE mode.

0         advance in the FDD: mode must show a correct behaviour.         The default scoring system is 1/3/0, but it is possible to define any sco system, provided that the number of points assigned for wins (and full- pbys), draws (and half-point byss), and over-the-board losses be between 0 9.9 (at most one decimal), points for a loss. Also, two draws can be worth more points than a win plus a loss, forfeit losses and zero-point 1 are always zero. It is not possible to define a different number of p depending on the colour.           Pairings can be freely changed by the arbiter after the program has gener them.         By default, zero-point byss are given to announced absent players (or manu defined by the arbiter). Then full-point byses (after proper warning) or half-p byses can be manually assigned to those players.           COPP allows to define forbidden pairings. It is unclear whether this is form allowed, but the program works correctly when they are present. According to rule C.04.2.D.8, COPP allows result changes in the last public rounds or in the next-to-last round, but not earlier. As a consequence, provisional result for adjourned games (draw) can only be used for pairing variable, but in COPP an excellent work has been done to prevent the stam FDE mode operation from creating dangerous situations, apput from possibility (adjust the number of modes, the PAB value and the scoring p system after a successful TRF import, which is an unavoidable evil to har minimum of flexibility (read: importing partial TRFs).           06         the word FIDE comote be used for any pairing-related service that is errors of the advalent of the fourth round or later.           07         all the pairing spectured by the software most strictly abbre to the rules of the pairing spredueed by the software most strictly abbre to the rules of the pai	04	every pairing-related service	This is quite a wide field for COPP.
Pairings can be freely changed by the arbiter after the program has gener them.         By default, zero-point byes are given to announced absent players (or man defined by the arbiter). Then full-point byes (after proper warning) or half-p byes can be manually assigned to those players.           COPP allows to define forbidden pairings. It is unclear whether this is form allowed, but the program works correctly when they are present.         According to rule C.04.2.D.8, COPP allows result changes in the last public rounds or in the next-to-last round, but not earlier. As a consequence, provisional result for adjourned games (draw) can only be used for pairing round.           05         the FIDE mode must inhift whatever functionalities or service that may be explicitly prohibite by FIDE         It is difficult to check if something that should not be available is act available, but in COPP an excellent work has been done to prevent the stant FIDE mode operation from creating dangerous situations, apart from possibility to adjust the number of rounds, the PAB value and the scoring p system after a successful TRF import, which is an unavoidable evil to has minimum of flexibility (read: importing partial TRFs).           06         the word FIDE cannot be used for auy pairing-related service that is runewish or endoes do FIDE rune of earlier does not clearly specify how to deal with latecomers arri- for the fourth round or later.           07         all the pairing produced by the runewish or endoes do by software must strictly adher to the rales of the pairing system rules, not raiseg (accept) for the runewish, normal pairings when compared to the pairing runewish, normal pairings when compared to the paired (according) to rule C.042.B.3)           08         pairing must be done using pairing ru		show a correct behaviour	The default scoring system is $1/\frac{1}{2}/0$ , but it is possible to define any scoring system, provided that the number of points assigned for wins (and full-point byes), draws (and half-point byes), and over-the-board losses be between 0 and 9.9 ( at most one decimal), points for a win be greater than points for a draw, which by themselves are greater than points for a loss. Also, two draws cannot be worth more points than a win plus a loss, forfeit losses and zero-point byes are always zero. It is not possible to define a different number of points depending on the colour.
05         the FIDE mode must inhibit whatever functionalities or service in the interport of the pairing service in the interport of the pairing service interport of the pairing service interport of the pairing service interport of the pairing produced by the service interport of the pairing produced by the ord function of the pairing system         It is is properly dealt with.           06         the word FIDE samet be considered to be pairing provided by FIDE         No new entries are allowed after the gaining and available is not allowing garantee that the pairing system           07         all the pairing system         This is properly dealt with.           08         pairing must be done using pairing that be done using system after to furth round has been pairing system.           09         pairing must be done using pairing that be done using system after to the pairing system.         As mentioned above, COPP in FIDE mode uses JaVaFo as its pairing eng this is not a 100% guarantee that the pairings when compared to the pairing system.           08         pairing must be done using pairing that should have correctly and all the pairing system.           09         pairing must be done using pairing that be able able able to the pairing system.           08         pairing must be done using pairing that be able able able able able able able a			Pairings can be freely changed by the arbiter after the program has generated them.
05         the FIDE mode must inhibit Matever functionalities or services to und.         11 is difficult to check if something that should not be available is actu available, but in COPP an excellent work has been done to prevent the stam FIDE mode or services that may be explicitly prohibited by FIDE.           05         the FIDE mode must inhibit Matever functionalities or services that may be explicitly prohibited by FIDE.         II is difficult to check if something that should not be available is actu available, but in COPP an excellent work has been done to prevent the stam FIDE mode operation from creating dangerous situations, apart from the may be explicitly prohibited by FIDE.           06         the word FIDE cannot be used for any pairing-fealed service that is currently not endorsed by FIDE.         No new entries are allowed after the fourth round has been paired (same t because the latter does not clearly specify how to deal with latecomers arri- for the fourth round or later.           06         the word FIDE cannot be used for any pairing-fealed service that is currently not endorsed by FIDE.         This is properly dealt with.           07         all the pairings produced by the software must strictly adher to the rales of the pairing system         As mentioned above, COPP in FIDE mode uses JaVaFo as its pairing eng This is not a 100% guarantee that the pairings are correct, because JaVaFo, some very minor weaknesses in normal pairings when compared to the pair rules of the pairing system           08         pairing must be done using pairing the software, of canzer) pairing must be chane und has been paired (accordingly to circle) code apprent dealt with.         This is properly dealt with.			By default, zero-point byes are given to announced absent players (or manually defined by the arbiter). Then full-point byes (after proper warning) or half-point byes can be manually assigned to those players.
06         the word FIDE cannot be used for my pairing-related service that is urrearly not endowed by FIDE         This is properly dealt with.           07         all the pairing system         This is properly dealt with.           07         all the pairing system         This is properly dealt with.           07         all the calcing system of the pairing system         This is properly dealt with.           07         all calcing mumbers, not rating <i>Geceptifor</i> for all the pairing must be done using pairing must be done using pairing mumbers, not rating <i>Geceptifor</i> for the fourth out has been paired (score).         This is properly dealt with.           07         all calcing system of the pairing system of the fourth round has been paired (same the route of the pairing system of the pairing system of the fourth round has been paired (same the software must strictly addret to the roles of the pairing system         This is properly dealt with.           07         all the calcing system         This is properly dealt with.           08         pairing must be done using pairing after the fourth round has been paired (accordingly to rule <i>Col4.2.B.3</i> )         This is properly dealt with.           10         the acceleration system defined in the FIDE handbook (see C/4.5) must be implemented         This is properly dealt with.           11         the properment defined in the FIDE handbook (see C/4.5) must be implemented         This is properly dealt with.           12         the moreterming able of the pairing system differed in the			COPP allows to define forbidden pairings. It is unclear whether this is formally allowed, but the program works correctly when they are present.
05       the FIDE mode must inhibit whatever functionalities or services that may be explicitly prohibited by FIDE       It is difficult to check if something that should not be available is actu available, but in COPP an excellent work has been done to prevent the stan FIDE mode operation from creating dangerous situations, apart from possibility to adjust the number of rounds, the PAB value and the scoring possibility to adjust the number of rounds, the PAB value and the scoring possibility to adjust the number of rounds, the PAB value and the scoring possibility to adjust the number of rounds, the PAB value and the scoring possibility to adjust the number of rounds, the PAB value and the scoring possibility to adjust the number of rounds, the PAB value and the scoring possibility to adjust the number of rounds, the PAB value and the scoring possibility to adjust the number of rounds, the PAB value and the scoring possibility to adjust the number of rounds.         06       the word FIDE cannot be used for any pairing produced by FIDE       No new entries are allowed after the fourth round has been paired (same the fourth round or later.         07       all the pairings produced by the rules of the pairing system       As mentioned above, COPP in FIDE mode uses JaVaFo as its pairing eng This is not a 100% guarantee that the pairings are correct, because JaVaFo, some very minor weaknesses in normal pairing when compared to the pairing rovided by B BieremaBoyzProgramming and available https://github.com/BieremaBoyzProgramming/bbpPairings.         08       pairing mumbers cannot be changed after the fourth round has been paired (accordingly to rule (accordi			According to rule C.04.2.D.8, COPP allows result changes in the last published rounds or in the next-to-last round, but not earlier. As a consequence, the provisional result for adjourned games (draw) can only be used for pairing one round.
No new entries are allowed after the fourth round has been paired (same the limit as rule C.04.2.B.3 - although no request was extended in this regard which cannot be considered against rule C.04.2.C2 (second item in the limit as rule C.04.2.B.3 - although no request was extended in this regard which cannot be considered against rule C.04.2.C2 (second item in the limit as rule cannot be used for any pairing-related service that is currently not endorsed by FIDE         06       the word FIDE cannot be used for any pairing-related service that is currently not endorsed by FIDE       This is properly dealt with.         07       all the pairings produced by the software must strictly adhere to the rules of the pairing system       As mentioned above, COPP in FIDE mode uses JaVaFo as its pairing eng This is not a 100% guarantee that the pairings are correct, because JaVaFo, some very minor weaknesses in normal pairings when compared to the pairing produced by BieremaBoyzProgramming and available https://github.com/BieremaBoyzProgramming and available https://github.com/BieremaBoyzProgramming/bbpPairings.         08       pairing must be done using pairing numbers, on tratings (except for the Dubov System, of course)       This is properly dealt with.         09       pairing numbers cannot be changed after the fulls thoodok (see C.04.5) must be implemented       The Baku Acceleration Method (currently the only one described in handbook) is implemented correctly. It is possible to define custom acceleration methods, that work properly.         11       the program must offer the capability to correctly import in the search weak mode two. GORD to define endors, there excite endors is the program in the program is properly inferred as lon it is fullewer the wore the word two. GOR	05	the FIDE mode must inhibit whatever functionalities or services that may be explicitly prohibited by FIDE	It is difficult to check if something that should not be available is actually available, but in COPP an excellent work has been done to prevent the standard FIDE mode operation from creating dangerous situations, apart from the possibility to adjust the number of rounds, the PAB value and the scoring point system after a successful TRF import, which is an unavoidable evil to have a minimum of flexibility (read: importing partial TRFs).
06       the word FIDE cannot be used for any pairing-related service that is currently not endorsed by FIDE       This is properly dealt with.         07       all the pairings produced by the software must strictly adhere to the rules of the pairing system       As mentioned above, COPP in FIDE mode uses JaVaFo as its pairing eng This is not a 100% guarantee that the pairings are correct, because JaVaFo, some very minor weaknesses in normal pairings when compared to the pairing system         08       pairing must be done using pairing numbers, not ratings ( <i>except for the Dubov System, of course</i> )       This is properly dealt with.         09       pairing numbers cannot be changed after the fourth round has been paired (accordingly to rule C.04.2.B.3)       This is properly dealt with.         10       the acceleration systems defined in the FIDE handbook (see C.04.5) must be implemented       The Baku Acceleration Method (currently the only one described in handbook) is implemented correctly. It is possible to define custom acceleration methods, that work properly.         11       the program must offer the capability to correctly import a TRF (implementing version TRF16, the scoring system is properly inferred as lon is followed by the method work by event by the one work work of the pairing at the follow work in the minor the paired by the one by the pairing the method is properly inferred as lon in the follower to the paire one work work the pairing the method work of the capability to correctly import a TRF (implementing version TRF16, the scoring system is properly inferred as lon is followed by the pairing the method work by evend by the correctly informed as independent at the pair work wore pairing the method work by correctly inferred as lon			No new entries are allowed after the fourth round has been paired (same time limit as rule C.04.2.B.3 - although no request was extended in this regard), which cannot be considered against rule C.04.2.C2 (second item in the list), because the latter does not clearly specify how to deal with latecomers arriving for the fourth round or later.
07       all the pairings produced by the software must strictly adhere to the rules of the pairing system       As mentioned above, COPP in FIDE mode uses JaVaFo as its pairing eng This is not a 100% guarantee that the pairings are correct, because JaVaFo, some very minor weaknesses in normal pairings when compared to the pairing system         08       pairing must be done using pairing numbers, not ratings (except for the Dubov System, of course)       This is properly dealt with.         09       pairing numbers cannot be changed after the fourth round has been paired (accordingly to rule C.04.2.B.3)       This is properly dealt with.         10       the acceleration systems defined in the FIDE handbook (see C.04.5) must be implemented       The Baku Acceleration Method (currently the only one described in handbook) is implemented correctly. It is possible to define custom acceleration methods, that work properly.         11       the program must offer the capability to correctly import a TRF (implementing version TRF16, the scoring system is properly inferred as lon is readvary, implementing also	06	the word FIDE cannot be used for any pairing-related service that is currently not endorsed by FIDE	This is properly dealt with.
08       pairing must be done using pairing numbers, not ratings (except for the Dubov System, of course)       This is properly dealt with.         09       pairing numbers cannot be changed after the fourth round has been paired (accordingly to rule C.04.2.B.3)       This is properly dealt with.         10       the acceleration systems defined in the FIDE handbook (see C.04.5) must be implemented       The Baku Acceleration Method (currently the only one described in handbook) is implemented correctly. It is possible to define custom acceleration methods, that work properly.         11       the program must offer the capability to correctly import a TRF (implementing version TRF16 is mendatory - implementing at a properting at a properting from TRF16, the scoring system is properly inferred as lon it follows the rules word by COND to define a property inferred as lon it follows.	07	all the pairings produced by the software must strictly adhere to the rules of the pairing system	As mentioned above, COPP in FIDE mode uses JaVaFo as its pairing engine. This is not a 100% guarantee that the pairings are correct, because JaVaFo, has some very minor weaknesses in normal pairings when compared to the pairing engine provided by BieremaBoyzProgramming and available at https://github.com/BieremaBoyzProgramming/bbpPairings.
09       pairing numbers cannot be changed after the fourth round has been paired (accordingly to rule C.04.2.B.3)       This is properly dealt with.         10       the acceleration systems defined in the FIDE handbook (see C.04.5) must be implemented       The Baku Acceleration Method (currently the only one described in handbook) is implemented correctly. It is possible to define custom acceleration methods, that work properly.         11       the program must offer the capability to correctly import a TRF (implementing version TRF16) is mendatory a impereding also       Importing a TRF correctly rebuilds the results cross-table. When importing from TRF16, the scoring system is properly inferred as lon it follows the rules word by COPD to define a subtract of the rules word by COPD to define a subtract of the subtract of	08	pairing must be done using pairing numbers, not ratings <i>(except for the Dubov System, of course)</i>	This is properly dealt with.
<ul> <li>10 the acceleration systems defined in the FIDE handbook (see C.04.5) must be implemented</li> <li>11 the program must offer the capability to correctly import a TRF (implementing version TRF16).</li> <li>11 the program must offer the implementing version TRF16 is mandatory a implementing at the program area also in the follows the rules would be COPD to define a sustainable.</li> </ul>	09	pairing numbers cannot be changed after the fourth round has been paired (accordingly to rule C.04.2.B.3)	This is properly dealt with.
<ul> <li>It is possible to define custom acceleration methods, that work properly.</li> <li>the program must offer the capability to correctly import a TRF (implementing version TRF16).</li> <li>Importing from TRF16, the scoring system is properly inferred as lon it follows the rules word by COPD to define a surface accustom acceleration methods, that work properly.</li> </ul>	10	the acceleration systems defined in the FIDE handbook <i>(see C.04.5)</i> must be implemented	The Baku Acceleration Method (currently the only one described in the handbook) is implemented correctly.
11 the program must offer the capability to correctly import a TRF (implementing version TRF16 is mandatory - implementing also it follows the rules wood by COPD to define a suprementing also			It is possible to define custom acceleration methods, that work properly.
version TRF06 is recommended) VCL.04).	11	the program must offer the capability to correctly import a TRF (implementing version TRF16 is mandatory - implementing also version TRF06 is recommended)	Importing a TRF correctly rebuilds the results cross-table. When importing from TRF16, the scoring system is properly inferred as long as it follows the rules used by COPP to define a custom scoring system (see VCL.04).

12	the exporter in the TRF format (version TRF16) must be done in such a way that the output can be correctly analyzed by a pairing-checker, even when a different scoring point is used - it is recommended that such export is	COPP can perform a TRF export at any time during the tournament, not only at the end. When the TRF export is performed at the right moment, it follows the TRF16 specification and it complies with the VCL request (tests were performed in tournaments where the 3/2/1/0 scoring system was used and where the score assigned to the PAB was draw - 2 points).
	done using UTF-8 encoding	When an export is made before the end of the tournament (or when there are still adjourned games), it is possible that its contents do not conform to the TRF16 specification, but no warnings will be given to indicate such a situation. Basically, it is up to the user to verify that the TRF export can be used as a proper rating report.
		The ability to export a tournament according to the TRF specification is not mentioned in the COPP manual as a way to export a tournament.
13	management of unusual results (like $\frac{1}{2}$ -0, 0- $\frac{1}{2}$ or an unforfeited 0- 0) must be available; on the other hand, inconsistent scores (like 1- $\frac{1}{2}$ or 1-1) are not allowed	<ul><li>COPP provides a list of possible scores, and only scores from that list can be entered. All of them are ok.</li><li>It is also possible to enter "quick" (or "unrated") scores, which are mapped in the TRF with W, D, and L codes.</li></ul>
14	possible forfeit results are only: 1F-0F, 0F-1F, 0F-0F - forfeit draws are not allowed	This is properly dealt with.
15	adjourned or postponed games (if allowed by the program) must be managed properly	A game may be marked as $"A\frac{1}{2}-A\frac{1}{2}"$ (meaning adjourned). In this case, it is considered a draw for the pairing phase. A result must be entered before pairing the second round after the round in which the adjournment occurred.
16	it must be possible to define the value (usually win or draw) for the pairing-allocated bye	This is properly dealt with (also loss is allowed).
17	it must be possible to assign half-point byes; if the software allows the assignment of full-point byes: upon assignment, a warning must be issued, stating that this practice is deprecated by FIDE	This is properly dealt with. Players can be declared absent, and then their score for the round (which is zero by default) can be set to half a point, or even, after a warning that full-point by assignments are deprecated by FIDE, to a full point.
18	the program should make the official FIDE rating list readily available; or, failing that, it should offer adequate facilities for an arbiter that would like to use it	This is formally dealt with. However, from a practical standpoint, the management of the FIDE rating lists in COPP is rather lackluster. At any moment, depending on the type of time-control chosen (standard, rapid, blitz), there is only one FIDE rating list available, which is automatically updated by the server every day. The user has no control over this list and cannot use private lists. Basically, in order to enter ratings that are not available on that single list, the user has to look at external sources and enter the ratings manually.
19	all tie breaks included in the pairings software will be tested and must give the results as per the rules described in the FIDE Handbook	Ignored for now (will be evaluated in 2025). This item was added to the VCL way too early, when not all tie-break rules were clearly defined, and when the lack of automated tools capable of verifying tie- break implementations allowed only vanilla tests whose results were not meaningful enough.

# Analysis of (supposed) weaknesses

The previous examination, with its coloured evaluation, already shows what the PICOTE considers to be the weaknesses of COPP. Green, of course, is a pass, Yellow is close, Rose is something that could be better.

Green or Yellow evaluations do not require further comment.

Regarding Rose:

- (a) (a) (VCL.05) Adjusting the scoring system or the number of rounds after importing is dangerous because it may result in wrong pairings for the imported rounds yes, as already said, it is a necessary evil to allow partial TRF import (which is useful for intercommunication between endorsed programs) and it helps to bypass a problem that FIDE itself should address (i.e. partial TRF import); nonetheless, since this is first an evaluation from a pairing standpoint, this is a warning that it is better to emphasize.
- (b) (VCL.12) Let's face it, the TRF export is not evaluated in the same way by COPP's author and the PICOTE, so the program does not really help its users to understand how to differentiate a full rating report from a partial TRF export.
- (c) (VCL.18) What the PICOTE considers an issue (and the COPP author apparently does not) is already described in the evaluation of the item; the management of rating lists is in Rose rather than something worse, simply because the endorsement rules are still more focused on pairings (see Article C.04.A.2) than on what is said in Article C.04.A.1 (*To manage big Swiss tournaments, the use of computer programs, to handle players' data, pairings and results, is necessary*).

# **CONCLUSION**

The product, identified by version number 7.7 and build number 1230, deserves to be endorsed by FIDE.

Since this report will be submitted directly to Congress, there is no need to issue an interim certificate. Therefore, if this report is approved, COPP can be added to the FIDE Endorsed Programs list at the first opportunity.

This report is to be annexed to the minutes of the Technical Commission meeting.

Torino, December 11<sup>th</sup>, 2023

IA MARIO HELD

# **EXERCISES IN TIE-BREAKING**

Rev. 2402220900 / C.07-2023

# **CONTENTS**

1	For	REWORD	4
2	Тне	CROSSTABLES	5
2	.1	Swiss individual tournament crosstable	5
2	.2	Round-robin individual tournament crosstable	5
2	.3	Swiss team tournament crosstable	6
PAI	RT C	DNE –INDIVIDUAL TOURNAMENTS	. 10
3	TIE	-BREAKS BASED ON BUCHHOLZ SYSTEM AND SIMILAR	. 10
3	.1	Buchholz (total)	. 10
3	.2	Buchholz Cut-1	. 15
3	.3	Average Buchholz of opponents	. 20
3	.4	Fore Buchholz	. 22
4	TIE	-BREAKS WITH SONNEBORN-BERGER AND KOYA SYSTEMS	. 24
4	.1	Sonneborn-Berger for Swiss tournaments	. 24
4	.2	Sonneborn-Berger in round-robin tournaments	. 29
4	.3	Kova System	. 30
5	TIE	-BREAK SYSTEMS BASED ON RATING AND PERFORMANCE	. 32
<b>5</b> 5	<b>TIE</b> .1	-BREAK SYSTEMS BASED ON RATING AND PERFORMANCE	<b>. 32</b> . 33
<b>5</b> 5	<b>TIE</b> .1 .2	-BREAK SYSTEMS BASED ON RATING AND PERFORMANCE Average Rating of opponents (ARO) Performance rating in the tournament (TPR)	<b>. 32</b> 33 35
<b>5</b> 5 5 5	<b>TIE</b> .1 .2 .3	-BREAK SYSTEMS BASED ON RATING AND PERFORMANCE	<b>. 32</b> 33 35 38
<b>5</b> 5 5 5 5	<b>TIE</b> .1 .2 .3 .4	-BREAK SYSTEMS BASED ON RATING AND PERFORMANCE	<b>. 32</b> 33 35 38 39
5 5 5 5 6	<b>TIE</b> .1 .2 .3 .4 <b>TIE</b>	-BREAK SYSTEMS BASED ON RATING AND PERFORMANCE	. 32 33 35 38 39 .41
5 5 5 5 6 6	TIE .1 .2 .3 .4 TIE .1	-BREAK SYSTEMS BASED ON RATING AND PERFORMANCE	. 32 33 35 38 39 . 41 42
5 5 5 6 6	TIE .1 .2 .3 .4 TIE .1	<ul> <li>-BREAK SYSTEMS BASED ON RATING AND PERFORMANCE</li> <li>Average Rating of opponents (ARO)</li> <li>Performance rating in the tournament (TPR)</li> <li>Average performance rating of opponents (APRO)</li> <li>Perfect tournament performance (PTP)</li> <li>-BREAKS BASED ON DIRECT ENCOUNTER (DE)</li> <li>Direct encounter in Swiss tournaments.</li> <li>Direct encounter in round-robin tournaments.</li> </ul>	. 32 33 35 38 39 . 41 42 44
5 5 5 6 6 7	Тте .1 .2 .3 .4 Тте .1 .2 Отн	-BREAK SYSTEMS BASED ON RATING AND PERFORMANCE	. 32 33 35 38 39 . 41 42 44 44
5 5 5 6 6 7	Тте .1 .2 .3 .4 Тте .1 .2 Отн .1	-BREAK SYSTEMS BASED ON RATING AND PERFORMANCE	. 32 33 35 38 39 . 41 42 44 . 44
5 5 5 6 6 7 7	TIE .1 .2 .3 .4 TIE .1 .2 .1 .1	-BREAK SYSTEMS BASED ON RATING AND PERFORMANCE	. 32 33 35 38 39 . 41 42 44 44 46
5 5 5 6 6 7 7 7	TIE .1 .2 .3 .4 TIE .1 .2 .1 .2 .3	-BREAK SYSTEMS BASED ON RATING AND PERFORMANCE	. 32 33 35 38 39 . 41 42 44 44 44 46 48
5 5 6 6 7 7 7 7	Тте .1 .2 .3 .4 Тте .1 .2 Отн .2 .3 .3	-BREAK SYSTEMS BASED ON RATING AND PERFORMANCE	. 32 33 35 38 39 . 41 42 44 44 44 46 48 49
5 5 6 6 7 7 7 7 7 7	TIE .1 .2 .3 .4 TIE .1 .2 .1 .2 .3 .4 RT T	-BREAK SYSTEMS BASED ON RATING AND PERFORMANCE Average Rating of opponents (ARO) Performance rating in the tournament (TPR) Average performance rating of opponents (APRO) Perfect tournament performance (PTP) -BREAKS BASED ON DIRECT ENCOUNTER (DE) Direct encounter in Swiss tournaments Direct encounter in round-robin tournaments HER TIE-BREAK SYSTEMS FOR INDIVIDUAL TOURNAMENTS Number of wins (WIN) and Number of games won (WON) Number of games played with Black (BPG) and won with Black (BWG) Games one elected to play (GE) Sum of progressive scores (PS)	. 32 33 35 38 39 . 41 42 42 44 44 44 46 48 49 52

9	Sis	тема Buchholz (BH)	53
10	Ехт	ENDED SONNEBORN-BERGER SYSTEM FOR TEAMS (ESB)	56
1	0.1	The Olympiad tie-break	61
11	Ехт	ENDED DIRECT ENCOUNTER FOR TEAMS (EDE)	62
12	Sys	STEMS BASED ON BOARDS COUNT	65
1	2.1	Board count (BC)	65
1	2.2	Top board results (TBR)	66
1	2.3	Bottom board elimination (BBE)	67
13	Sco	DRES AND SCHEDULE STRENGTH COMBINATION (SSSC)	68

# **1 FOREWORD**

In August 2023, the FIDE Council approved the new regulations for playoff and tiebreak, which contains important changes, as for example the abolition of the virtual opponent and a deep change in the management of unplayed games and matches.

This paper aims to help study the new rules by supplying some practical examples of how they should be applied in a realistic context, for each tie-break system. This is not a paper you want to read or study, but a tool, a collection of exercises to solve after studying, to verify and perfect the comprehension of the rules.

In tournament practice, tie-breaking is carried out with a sequence of methods applied in succession until all the ties are resolved; here, for simplicity, we will always use the chosen system as the first tie-breaker.

As a methodology, the reader might want to follow the exercises in progression, in the order in which they are presented, keeping at hand a copy of the crosstable and of the FIDE regulations on technical play-offs and tie-breaks (C.07), to which all references in brackets ("[]") refer. It would be advisable to try to solve the exercise by yourself, and then compare the procedure and calculations with the given solution and the rules.

This paper aims to be accessible even to beginners, as long as they know the rules well enough that they can find there the basic ideas that the exercises illustrate, which we tried to introduce gradually. Even the more expert readers will probably find it advisable to read, at least briefly, even the simplest examples - even if they are already well familiar with the subject - so as not to lose any useful information.

We conclude by observing that C.07 regulations try to consider all the tie-breaks used in chess, even if the value of some of them may be questionable. The event organizer should choose which ones to use, or even possibly invent new ones.

Enjoy and good luck!

# 2 THE CROSSTABLES

In order to help comparing the various systems, we use the same tournaments in all the examples, namely a Swiss and a Round-robin for individuals, and a Swiss for teams. The scoring system is the traditional one (zero points for a loss, half a point for a draw, one point for a win for single games; zero points for a loss, one for a draw and two for a win for team matches).

# 2.1 Swiss individual tournament crosstable

For convenience, the board is sorted by score (descending) and pairing number (i.e., initial ranking). Unplayed games are highlighted in red: the half-point requested byes (HPB) of David (#4, second round) and Jessica (#9, third round); the forfeit defeats of Paul (#14, third round) and Jessica (#9, fourth round); the justified absence (zero points bye, ZPB) of Paul (#14, fourth round); the withdrawal of Nick (#12, fourth round); the byes received from the pairing (PAB). Opponents with any kind of unplayed games are highlighted too (yellow background).

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4
3	Charline	2100	3.5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1
16	Stephan	1450	3.5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15
6	Franck	1950	3.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8
5	Helene	2000	2.5	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10
8	Irina	1850	2.5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6
11	Maria	1700	2.5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7
12	Nick (W)	1650	2.0	-W4	+BYE	+F14		
14	Paul	1550	2.0	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13
15	Reine	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16
7	Genevieve	1900	1.5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11
9	Jessica	1800	1.5	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE
13	Opal	1600	1.5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14
10	Lais	1750	1.0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5

# 2.2 Round-robin individual tournament crosstable

For our convenience, this crosstable is presented both in the format traditionally used for round-robin tournaments and in the format typically used for Swiss tournaments. The first format highlights the forfeit defeat of Franck (#6) in the fourth round, which in the "Swiss" format is not distinguishable because forfeit wins and losses are equivalent to played games in round-robin tournaments.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	6
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	*	1	1	0	1	1⁄2
2	Bruno	2150	3.5	0	*	1⁄2	1	1	1
3	Charline	2100	3.5	0	1⁄2	*	1	1	1
4	David	2050	1.5	1	0	0	*	1⁄2	0
5	Helene	2000	1.5	0	0	0	1⁄2	*	+
6	Franck	1950	1.5	1⁄2	0	0	1	I.	*

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	=W5	+W2	+B3	-W4	+B6
2	Bruno	2150	3.5	+W6	-B1	+W5	=W3	+B4
3	Charline	2100	3.5	+W4	+B6	-W1	=B2	+W5
4	David	2050	1.5	-B3	-B5	=W6	+B1	-W2
5	Franck	1950	1.5	=B1	+W4	-B2	-W6	-B3
6	Helene	2000	1.5	-B2	-W3	=B4	+B5	-W1

#### 2.3 Swiss team tournament crosstable

Team tournaments have some characteristics that distinguish them from individual ones. The first and foremost is that each team has two scores, one relating to the points obtained in the match ("Match points", MP), and one relating to the players' points ("Game points", GP) [11.1]. Our Swiss tournament includes 14 teams, fielding 4 players each (credits: Roberto Ricca). We need the crosstables (individual and team) and the composition of each team; all this data is usually made available by the pairing software.

#	ТЕАМ	MP	GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7
1	Antelopes	10	17,5	8w2,5	4b1,5	7w3	2b2,5	5w1,5	+F	3b2,5
2	Bonobos	10	17	9b3	3w4	5b0	1w1,5	13w3	4b2,5	10b3
3	Cougars	10	16	10w2,5	2b0	9w3	6b2,5	4w3	5b3,5	1w1,5
4	Deer	10	17	11b3	1w2,5	13b3	5w3,5	3b1	2w1,5	9b2,5
5	Elephants	10	18	12w4	6b3	2w4	4b0,5	1b2,5	3w0,5	13b3,5
6	Falcons	7	12,5	13b2	5w1	8b3	3w1,5	11b2,5	-F	12w2,5
7	Giraffes	6	11,5	14w2	8b2	1b1	10w2,5	9b2	13w2	ZPB
8	Hippopotami	7	15	1b1,5	7w2	6w1	12b3,5	10b2	9w2	11w3
9	Iguanas	6	14,5	2w1	12b4	3b1	14w3	7w2	8b2	4w1,5
10	Jackals	5	13	3b1,5	11w1,5	12b2,5	7b1,5	8w2	14b3	2w1
11	Koalas	4	11,5	4w1	10b2,5	14w2	13b1,5	6w1,5	12w2	8b1
12	Lynxes	2	7,5	5b0	9w0	10w1,5	8w0,5	PAB	11b2	6b1,5
13	Moose	6	11,5	6w2	14b2,5	4w1	11w2,5	2b1	7b2	5w0,5
14	Narwhals	4	11,5	7b2	13w1,5	11b2	9b1	HPB	10w1	PAB

"	TEAM			PLA	/ERS		
#	ICAM	1	2	3	4	5	6
1	Antelopes	1	14	16	39	50	64
2	Bonobos	2	29	21	26	65	46
3	Cougars	3	25	32	20	58	54
4	Deer	4	11	9	68	48	70
5	Elephants	10	22	27	35	59	72
6	Falcons	18	13	41	38	53	63
7	Giraffes	5	17	44	45	42	77
8	Hippopotami	28	19	24	49	66	60
9	Iguanas	8	12	31	79	61	67
10	Jackals	6	30	47	57	74	83
11	Koalas	33	23	43	52	78	73
12	Lynxes	15	40	51	69	75	84
13	Moose	7	56	36	80	76	82
14	Owls	34	55	37	62	71	81

ID	Т	PLAYER	ELO	NP	PT	<b>R1</b>	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7
1	1	Armando Aglio	2110	5	6,0	28w1		05w1	02b1	10w1	18b+	03b1
2	2	Bernardo Berci	2105	6	3,0	08b1	03w1	10b0	01w0		11b0	30b1
3	3	Carlo Cohen	2100	7	4,0	06w1	02b0	08w0	18b1	04w1	10b1	01w0
4	4	Diego De La Vega	2096	4	2,0	33b0		56b1		03b0		08b1
5	7	Gregor Gewiss	2091	5	2,0	34w=	28b=	01b0	06w1	08b0		ZPB
6	10	John Jelba	2086	6	3,5	03b0	33w=	15b1	05b0	28w1	34b1	
7	13	Marius Montana	2081	5	2,5	13w1			33w1	29b=	17b0	10w0
8	9	Isidora Iago	2076	7	5,0	02w0	15b1	03b1	34w1	05w1	28b1	04w0
9	4	Desiree Dong	2071	4	2,5		16b1		22b1	32b=	29b0	
10	5	Elizabeth Era	2066	7	4,0	15w1	18b1	02w1	11b0	01b0	03w0	07b1
11	4	David Dong	2061	6	2,5		14w0	80w0	10w1	25w=	02w1	12w0
12	9	Ismaele Imbotto	2056	5	3,5		40w1		55b1	44b=	19w0	11b1
13	6	Frank Fala	2051	5	3,5	07b0		24w1	25b1	23w1	14b-	40b=
14	1	Alejandro Almeida	2046	6	5,0	19b=	11b1	17b1	29w0	22b=	13w+	25w1
15	12	Lucas Locas	2041	4	0,5	10b0	08w0	06w0		PAB		18b=
16	1	Alcide Angolano	2036	3	1,5		09w0		65b1			32b=
17	7	Genny Gewiss	2031	5	2,5	55b1	19w=	14w0	30b0		07w1	ZPB
18	6	Filippa Franceschi	2026	5	1,5		10w0	28b0	03w0	33b1	01w-	15w=
19	8	Herbert Honacek	2021	6	4,0	14w=	17b=		51w=	30w=	12b1	43b1
20	3	Cosimo Chespari	2016	3	2,0		26b0	61w1	53w1			
21	2	Barbara Bernard	2011	3	1,5			35b0		36b=	68b1	
22	5	Elsa Era	2006	7	4,5	40b1	41w1	29b1	09w0	14w=	25b=	56w=
23	11	Kristin Kormans	2001	5	0,0	68b0	30w0		56w0	13b0	51b0	
24	8	Helmut Holler	1997	6	2,5	39b0	44w=	13b0	69b1		31w=	52w=
25	3	Cristian Celamont	1992	6	1,0	30b0	29w0		13w0	11b=	22w=	14b0
26	2	Bruno Boita	1987	4	3,5	79b1	20w1			80w1		57b=
27	5	Erika Espate	1982	1	1,0							80b1
28	8	Hans Holz	1977	7	3,0	01b0	05w=	18w1	40b1	06b0	08w0	33w=
29	2	Bruce Belanoy	1972	7	5,5	31w1	25b1	22w0	14b1	07w=	09w1	47w1
30	10	Jean Joyce	1967	6	4,5	25w1	23b1	40w1	17w1	19b=		02w0
31	9	Ingrid Ilvas	1962	5	2,0	29b0		32w0	37w1	42w=	24b=	
32	3	Cesira Cohen	1957	6	4,5	57w1		31b1	38b=	09w=	35b1	16w=
33	11	Kris Kelpa	1952	7	3,5	04w1	06b=	34w1	07b0	18w0	40w=	28b=
34	14	Nikola Neric	1947	4	0,5	05b=		33b0	08b0	HPB	06w0	PAB
35	5	Enza Eliprandi	1942	5	3,5			21w1	68b=	39b1	32w0	76w1
36	13	Marino Marino	1937	4	2,0	38w=	37w=		43w=	21w=		

37	14	Nicola Neba	1932	3	1,0		36b=	52b=	31b0	HPB		PAB
38	6	Francisco Formenteros	1927	5	3,0	36b=	59w=	66w1	32w=	73w=	50b-	
39	1	Abel Adardo	1922	5	2,5	24w1	68b0	45w0	46w=	35w0	41b+	
40	12	Lonnie Lemmie	1917	6	1,0	22w0	12b0	30b0	28w0	PAB	33b=	13w=
41	6	Federico Frappani	1912	5	3,0	56w1	22b0	49b1		52b0	39w-	51w1
42	7	George Gotham	1907	4	1,0	81b0		50w0	74b=	31b=		ZPB
43	11	Kelly Kort	1902	5	2,0	48w0		55b=	36b=		69w1	19w0
44	7	Gipo Gressi	1897	4	2,5	71w=	24b=			12w=	56b1	ZPB
45	7	Gunnar Gunnarson	1892	4	2,5		66w=	39b1	47w1		80w0	ZPB
46	2	Blanca Bolaverde	1887	4	1,5	61w0		59w0	39b=	82b1		
47	10	June Joyce	1882	5	1,0			51b0	45b0	49w0	55w1	29b0
48	4	Delly Drago	1877	6	4,5	43b1	50b=	82w1	59b1		65b=	61w=
49	8	Hakim Ho	1872	4	3,0	50w1		41w0		47b1		78b1
50	1	Asdrubale Arca	1867	3	2,5	49b0	48w=	42b1			38w+	
51	12	Leone Leone	1862	4	2,5			47w1	19b=	PAB	23w1	41b0
52	11	Kirk Koman	1857	6	4,5		57b1	37w=	76w1	41w1	75b=	24b=
53	6	Flavio Federici	1852	3	1,0		72b=		20b0			75b=
54	3	Cammy Calat	1847	2	2,0						59w1	64b1
55	14	Noah Negus	1842	5	0,5	17w0	56w0	43w=	12w0	HPB	47b0	PAB
56	13	Maurice Melancon	1837	6	2,5	41b0	55b1	04w0	23b1		44w0	22b=
57	10	Juan Jupp	1832	4	0,5	32b0	52w0				62b0	26w=
58	3	Cory Cniser	1827	4	2,5	74b=	65w0	67b1		68b1		
59	5	Emanuelle Ener	1822	5	2,5	69w1	38b=	46b1	48w0		54b0	
60	8	Hannibal Hermol	1817	2	1,5				75w1	74w=		
61	9	Ivo Ierasimov	1812	4	2,5	46b1	75w1	20b0				48b=
62	14	Nuccio Negri	1807	4	3,0		80w0	73w1	79w1	HPB	57w1	PAB
63	6	Frederick Fogar	1802	1	0,5	82w=						
64	1	Aaron Asta	1797	2	0,0					72b0		54w0
65	2	Brandon Bogart	1792	4	2,0		58b1		16w0		48w=	74w=
66	8	Hyeronimus Hermol	1787	3	1,0		45b=	38b0			79b=	
67	9	Ion Iodiac	1782	2	0,0			58w0		77b0		
68	4	Daria De La Vega	1777	7	4,5	23w1	39w1	76b1	35w=	58w0	21w0	79b1
69	12	Lydia Lameran	1772	4	0,0	59b0	79w0		24w0	PAB	43b0	
70	4	Diana Drago	1767	1	1,0	78w1						
71	14	Norberto Nodo	1762	2	1,5	44b=	82b1			HPB		PAB
72	5	Erika Ecore	1757	3	2,5	84b1	53w=			64w1		
73	11	Kurt Kontos	1752	3	1,5		74w1	62b0		38b=		
74	10	Julio Joyce	1747	7	3,5	58w=	73b0	75w=	42w=	60b=	81w1	65b=
75	12	Lavinia Lentrero	1742	5	1,5		61b0	74b=	60b0	PAB	52w=	53w=
76	13	Michael Morte	1737	3	0,0			68w0	52b0			35b0
77	7	Gennady Gomirov	1732	2	1,0					67w1	82b0	ZPB
78	11	Ky Korbel	1727	2	0,0	70b0						49w0
79	9	Isobel Iodiac	1722	5	1,5	26w0	69b1		62b0		66w=	68w0
80	13	Manuel Malagracia	1717	5	3,0		62b1	11b1		26b0	45b1	27w0
81	14	Nando Nodo	1712	2	1,0	42w1				HPB	74b0	PAB
82	13	Marko Mokala	1707	5	1,5	63b=	71w0	48b0		46w0	77w1	
83	10	Jacques Junipero	1702	0	0,0							
84	12	Lana Leva	1697	1	0,0	72w0				PAB		

Unplayed matches are highlighted for clarity. There are no universal rules for the management of such matches. The treatment rules should therefore be provided for by the specific tournament regulations. Here are the provisions for our tournament:

- PAB: one match point, two game points and zero player points
- HPB: one match point, two game points and zero player points
- ZPB: zero match points, zero game points and zero player points

- -F: zero match points, zero game points and zero player points
- +F: two match points, 4 game points, one point for each player

<u>Note</u>: The sum of the individual scores of the players may differ from the game points score (GP) of the team, because some types of unplayed matches (PAB, HPB, ...) give game points to the team but do not give points to the players.

For some tie-breaks, we also need the exact order of players fielding. Such information should be deduced from pairings, a task that is not difficult but rather tedious; this data will be provided only as needed.

# **PART ONE -- INDIVIDUAL TOURNAMENTS**

# **3 TIE-BREAKS BASED ON BUCHHOLZ SYSTEM AND SIMILAR**

The biggest difficulty encountered in calculating Buchholz scores comes from unplayed games, either of the player or of some opponent of theirs. In the following exercises, those concepts are introduced gradually to aid their assimilation.

This chapter does not include round-robin exercises because, as is known, Buchholz-type tie-breaks are not applicable to this type of tournaments.

#### Buchholz in round-robin tournaments

Buchholz is useless in a round-robin tournament, because it cannot break ties (all players with the same score have the same tiebreaker). In fact, in these tournaments each player meets all other players (any games won or lost by forfeit are equivalent to played games). If the tournament includes N players (for simplicity, let's assume N even; the extension to the odd case is in any case immediate), a total of  $\frac{1}{2}N \cdot (N-1)$  games take place, each of which distributes one point; so (except in exceptional cases) this is also the total of points distributed among all players (for example, a tournament with 6 players distributes  $\frac{6x5}{2}=15$  points). The player's Buchholz is the sum of the opponents' scores - therefore, to calculate it, we simply subtract the player's score from the total (e.g., if they scored 3 points, their Buchholz is 15-3 = 12).

### 3.1 Buchholz (total)

# Exercise 1

### In the Swiss tournament, calculate the Buchholz score (total) of player #2.

Let's consider the following excerpt from the crosstable, showing the tournament history of the player (first row, in blue) and of all their opponents, and their scores:

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4
3	Charline	2100	3.5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2
16	Stephan	1450	3.5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15
7	Genevieve	1900	1.5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11
10	Lais	1750	1.0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5

Since neither the player nor any of the opponents have any unplayed games, the basic Buchholz definition [8.1] applies, and no special adjustments are required; the player's Buchholz is simply given by the sum of the opponents' scores:

BH(#2) = 1.0 + 1.5 + 3.5 + 3.5 + 3.5 = 13.0.

## Exercise 2

In the Swiss tournament, determine the ranking order between players #1 and #3 using the Buchholz system.

#1	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1
15	Reine	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16
9	Jessica	1800	1.5	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE
13	Opal	1600	1.5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14

From the crosstable, let's extract the tournament histories for the involved players.

#3	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
3	Charline	2100	3.5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1
6	Franck	1950	3.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8
11	Maria	1700	2.5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7
8	Irina	1850	2.5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6

Both played all their games, but the same is not true for all their opponents. We should therefore calculate the opponents' contribution taking into account their unplayed games.

Let's start with #1 (Alyx) opponents:

Opponent	+W9 (*)	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4 (*)
Opp. score	1.5	1.5	4.0	2.0	3.5

Opponents highlighted with an asterisk have one or more unplayed games, and their score may need to be corrected. To do this, let's take a look at their tournament history, which includes several types of unplayed games. The score of a player who has unplayed matches must be adjusted differently (as already happened with previous regulations) depending on whether it is used to calculate the tie-break of the players themselves or their opponents. At the moment we are interested only in the second case – in fact, to calculate the Buchholz of player #1, we need to adjust the scores of players #4 and #9.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1
9	Jessica	1800	1.5	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE

For this calculation, we must resort to articles 16.2-16.3 of the regulations. The adjustment takes place only for the rounds in which the player *requested a bye* (those in which the player was possibly withdrawn also count as such) *and which were not followed by any round in which the player was available to play* [16.1.2]. For the purposes of the opponents' Buchholz, these rounds count as draws [16.3.2]. In all other cases, the

unplayed round is calculated with the assigned score [16.3.1], i.e., the same one displayed on the crosstable and added to obtain the total score, which, for convenience, from now on we will call *face value*.

For both players #4 and #9, all unplayed rounds are followed by at least one round in which the player was available to play, and are therefore calculated at their face value. This basically means that we can calculate the Buchholz of player #1 simply by adding all the scores of their opponents as they are shown on the scoreboard. We therefore have: BH(#1) = 1.5+1.5+4.0+2.0+3.5=12.5.

Let's now calculate the tie-break of player #3 (Charline). Again, we have to investigate the opponents who had unplayed games, which are #4, #6 and #11.

#3	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
3	Charline	2100	3.5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1
6	Franck	1950	3.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8
11	Maria	1700	2.5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7
8	Irina	1850	2.5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6

Once again, all unplayed rounds are followed by at least one round with availability to play, so all results are taken at face value. We can therefore calculate the Buchholz, which is BH(#3) = 2.5+3.0+2.5+3.5+4.0=15.5.

Hence, player #3 (Charline) precedes #1 (Alyx) in the rankings.

### Exercise 3

In the Swiss tournament, determine the ranking order between players #5, #8 and #11 using the Buchholz system.

We now have a new case: one of the players (#11) has an unplayed game, of which we should determine the contribution, not only for opponents as in the previous exercise, but also for the player himself [16.4]. Let's look at the players' data.

#5	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
5	Helene	2000	2.5	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10
11	Maria	1700	2.5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7
15	Reine	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16
7	Genevieve	1900	1.5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11
13	Opal	1600	1.5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14
10	Lais	1750	1.0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5

Player #5 has no unplayed games. Among his opponents, player #11 has a forfeit win (due opponent's forfeit) in the fourth round, which is an unplayed game of the type [16.2.2] and is therefore counted at face value [16.3.1]. Their Buchholz is therefore

BH(#5) = 2.5 + 2.0.1.5 + 1.5 + 1.0 = 8.5.

#8	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
8	Irina	1850	2.5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6
3	Charline	2100	3.5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2
16	Stephan	1450	3.5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15
6	Franck	1950	3.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8
14	Paul	1550	2.0	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13
13	Opal	1600	1.5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14

Also Player #8 has no unplayed games, and among the opponents we count a bye assigned by the pairing (PAB) [16.2.1], a forfeit defeat [16.2.4], and a round of scheduled absence (i.e., a zero points bye on request) followed by a played round [16.2.3]. All these results are calculated at face value, so Buchholz is BH(#8) = 3.5+3.5+3.0+2.0+1.5=13.5.

#11	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
11	Maria	1700	2.5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7
3	Charline	2100	3.5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2
16	Stephan	1450	3.5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15
5	Helene	2000	2.5	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10
7	Genevieve	1900	1.5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11

Finally, player #11's opponents only have regular played games, but this time it is the player themself who did not play a round, namely because of a forfeit win [16.2.2]. For this round, the contribution that the player gives to themself is calculated as a game played against a dummy opponent (*not to be confused with the virtual opponent*!) who has the same number of points as the player, and ends with the result corresponding to the points awarded [16.4].

<u>Note</u>: the score of the dummy opponent is not the one held by the player at the time of the unplayed round, but rather the one with which the player finished the tournament. For Buchholz, knowing how the match ended is not relevant, because Buchholz simply adds up the scores of all the player's opponents - but it would be very relevant in the case of the Sonneborn-Berger system!

Now, the dummy opponent has 2.5 points, the very same as player #11. So the player's Buchholz is BH(#11) = 3.5+3.5+2.5+2.5+1.5 = 13.5.

Finally, let's compare the results: player #5, with Buchholz equal to 8.5, is ranked third, while players #8 and #11, both with Buchholz 13.5, are still tied for the first place. To break this tie, we will have to move on to the next tie-break of the list, if any, or to a drawing of lots [4.2].

\*\*\*\*\*

After these first exercises, we can observe that, in practice, despite the presence of unplayed rounds, the Buchholz of the players involved was calculated simply using the scores of the opponents just as they were displayed in the rankings. This is certainly not a coincidence: *the philosophy of the new regulations is that, in general, the score used for the tie-breaks should be the same one that determines the ranking*. An exception is made

for opponents who finished their tournament prematurely – because they could otherwise damage their opponents' tie-break with an unduly low score (think for example of a player who, after winning several games, was suddenly forced to withdraw for some reason or other). Therefore, to limit the damage to opponents, all unplayed games from the withdrawal onwards are calculated as draws; we will see that in the next exercise.

#### Exercise 4

In the Swiss tournament, using the Buchholz system, determine the ranking order for players at 3.5 points.

Among the opponents of the affected players, we now find player #12 who, having received a PAB in the second round and, immediately after that, a forfeit win in the third round, withdrew from the tournament from the fourth round. Let us proceed step by step.

#1	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1
15	Reine	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16
9	Jessica	1800	1.5	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE
13	Opal	1600	1.5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14

Let's start with player #1, who played all his games; among their opponents, we find #4, who got a half-point bye, and #9, who has three unplayed games. The first of these unplayed games, a half-point requested bye, is followed by a forfeit loss (both those are rounds *without availability to play*) [16.2.4], but in the end the player re-entered the tournament, although receiving a PAB [16.2 .1], and was therefore available to play. Hence, the bye on request constitutes an unplayed round of type [16.2.3].

The same goes for player #4, whose bye on request is also followed by played rounds. Ultimately, all unplayed games are calculated at their face value [16.3.1]. The player's Buchholz is therefore BH(#1) = 4.0+3.5+2.0+1.5+1.5=12.5.

#3	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
3	Charline	2100	3.5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1
6	Franck	1950	3.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8
8	Irina	1850	2.5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6
11	Maria	1700	2.5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7

Let's now look at the situation for player #3. Among their opponents, we count a halfpoint bye on request [16.2.3], a PAB [16.2.1] and a forfeit win [16.2.2]; once again, all these unplayed games are counted at nominal value, so the Buchholz is

BH(#3) = 4.0 + 3.5 + 3.0 + 2.5 + 2.5 = 15.5.

#16	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
16	Stephan	1450	3.5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3
8	Irina	1850	2.5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6
11	Maria	1700	2.5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7
15	Reine	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16
7	Genevieve	1900	1.5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11

Now let's move on to #16. The situation is similar: among the opponents there is only one forfeit win [16.2.2], and Buchholz is BH(#16) = 4.0+2.5+2.5+2.0+1.5=12.5.

#4	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4
3	Charline	2100	3.5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2
12	Nick (W)	1650	2.0	-W4	+BYE	+F14		
13	Opal	1600	1.5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14

Last, player #4 got a half-point bye, and faced a player who later withdrew. Let's see the contributions due to these rounds.

The half-point bye on request provides the player with a *contribution equal to their score*, i.e., **3.5** points, as per the crosstable.

The contribution of the withdrawn opponent is calculated as follows: the PAB and the forfeit win contribute their nominal value [16.3.1], therefore one point each. The last two rounds, however, which are voluntarily unplayed rounds, and are not followed by any rounds with availability to play, fall into category [16.2.5] and therefore carry a contribution for the opponent of half a point each [16.3.2]. Hence, player #12's adjusted contribution is worth a total of 0.0+1.0+0.5+0.5 = 3.0 points.

The Buchholz of #4 is therefore BH(#4) = 3.0+3.5+1.5+3.5+3.5 = 15.0.

The ranking therefore is #3(15.5), #4(15.0) and, still tied, #1 and #16 (12.5). For the last two players we will have to continue with the next tie-breaks or drawing of lots.

# 3.2 Buchholz Cut-1

*Modifiers* [14] are rules that alter the behaviour of a tie-break system in a predefined manner; the best known, and most used, is the Cut-1 modifier [14.1], which ignores the least significant contribution in the tie-break calculation.

In the case of the Buchholz system, this usually means *ignoring the contribution of the opponent with the smallest score*; However, if the player has some *voluntarily* unplayed games (forfeit or bye on request), the smallest of the contributions due to these unplayed games will be ignored [16], with the idea that they are less significant than those results that were decided on-the-board.

## Exercise 5

In the Swiss tournament, using the Buchholz Cut-1 system, determine the ranking order for players at 2.5 points.

Here we encounter for the first time the application of the Cut-1 modifier [14.1] to the Buchholz system. It requires ignoring, among all the opponents' contributions, the least significant one, which corresponds to the opponent with the lowest score [14.1.1], except when the player has voluntarily unplayed games (this case will be explained later). We proceed as usual to calculate all the opponents' contributions for each player; now, however, before performing the actual sum, we must *identify and discard* the least significant contribution.

#5	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
5	Helene	2000	2.5	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10
11	Maria	1700	2.5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7
15	Reine	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16
7	Genevieve	1900	1.5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11
13	Opal	1600	1.5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14
10	Lais	1750	1.0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5

Player #5 played all their rounds. Among their opponents, #11 has a forfeit win [16.2.2], which is calculated at face value [16.3.1]. The contributions are therefore 2.5, 2.0, 1.5, 1.5, 1.0; the least significant is that of opponent #10, who has fewer points (1.0); the player's Buchholz Cut-1 is therefore BH-C1(#5) = 2.5+2.0+1.5+1.5 = 7.5.

#8	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
8	Irina	1850	2.5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6
3	Charline	2100	3.5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2
16	Stephan	1450	3.5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15
6	Franck	1950	3.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8
14	Paul	1550	2.0	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13
13	Opal	1600	1.5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14

Same holds for player #8, so the received contributions are 3.5, 3.5, 3.0, 2.0, 1.5; among these, the least significant is 1.5, therefore BH-C1(#8) = 3.5+3.5+3.0+2.0 = 12.0.

#11	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
11	Maria	1700	2.5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7
3	Charline	2100	3.5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2
16	Stephan	1450	3.5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15
5	Helene	2000	2.5	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10
7	Genevieve	1900	1.5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11

Player #11, on the other hand, has an unplayed game. This is however a forfeit win [16.2.2], and therefore an available-to-play round; the contribution of this round is equal to the player's final score, i.e., 2.5 points. The contributions are therefore 3.5, 3.5, 2.5, 2.5, 1.5. Among these, since there are no voluntarily unplayed rounds (forfeit defeats or byes on request) the smallest one is ignored, namely that of #7 (1.5). Therefore,

BH-C1(#11) = 3.5+3.5+2.5+2.5 = 12.0.

The ranking order is therefore #8 and #11 still tied (12.0), #5 (7.5).

# Exercise 6

In the Swiss tournament, using the Buchholz Cut-1 system, determine the ranking order for players at 1.5 points.

In this exercise, for the first time we apply the Cut-1 modifier [14.1] for a player who has some unplayed games in his tournament history. For this player we are to apply [16.5] and choose the contribution to ignore among those relating to unplayed games.

#7	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
7	Genevieve	1900	1.5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3
16	Stephan	1450	3.5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15
5	Helene	2000	2.5	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10
11	Maria	1700	2.5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7
15	Reine	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16

As usual, let's look at the players one by one.

Player #7 played all his games; subtracting the 2.0 contribution of #15, which is the least significant, we obtain for the Buchholz the value BH-C1(#7) = 4.0+3.5+2.5+2.5 = 12.5.

#9	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
9	Jessica	1800	1.5	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4
10	Lais	1750	1.0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5

Here too we have nothing new regarding the contributions of the opponents, but player #9 also has three unplayed games that we should examine. We must choose the contribution to be ignored among the games lost by forfeit and byes on request [16.5] – in our case, between the third and fourth rounds (the fifth round is in fact a PAB, and therefore with availability to play, and as such is not among those rounds to be cut first).

For each unplayed game, the contribution is equal to a dummy opponent with the player's score, i.e., 1.5 points. We must discard the lesser contribution due to a voluntarily unplayed round (rounds 3 and 4); being equal, we discard any of the two. The tie-break value is therefore BH-C1(#9) = 3.5+1.0+1.5+1.5 = 7.5.

#13	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
13	Opal	1600	1.5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1
5	Helene	2000	2.5	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10
8	Irina	1850	2.5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6
14	Paul	1550	2.0	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13

Finally, for #13 again there is nothing special; the least significant contribution is the 2.0 given by opponent #14, so BH-C1(#13) = 3.5+3.5+2.5+2.5 = 12.0.

The ranking order is therefore #7 (12.5), #13 (12.0), #9 (7.5).
In the Swiss tournament, using the Buchholz Cut-1 system, determine the ranking order for players at 3.5 points.

#1	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1
15	Reine	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16
9	Jessica	1800	1.5	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE
13	Opal	1600	1.5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14

As usual, let's examine affected players one by one.

Player #1 played all their games, and their opponents' unplayed games must all be calculated at face value [16.3.1]; discarding the least significant contribution (1.5), the tiebreak is BH-C1(#1) = 4.0+3.5+2.0+1.5 = 11.0.

#3	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
3	Charline	2100	3.5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1
6	Franck	1950	3.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8
8	Irina	1850	2.5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6
11	Maria	1700	2.5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7

Same holds for player #3. Discarding the less significant contribution (2.5), we get BH-C1(#3) = 4.0+3.5+3.0+2.5 = 13.0.

#4	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4
3	Charline	2100	3.5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2
12	Nick (W)	1650	2.0	-W4	+BYE	+F14		
13	Opal	1600	1.5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14

Opponent #12 has two unplayed games in the second and third round, respectively of type [16.2.1] and [16.2.2], that are taken at face value [16.3.1]. In the last two rounds, that player withdrew (voluntarily unplayed rounds). For the opponents' Buchholz calculation purposes, each of these rounds is worth as much as a draw [16.3.2], so the total contribution of #12 to the opponents' Buchholz is 0.0+1.0+1.0+0.5+0.5 = 3.0.

Player #4 requested a half-point bye, which is however followed by rounds with availability to play and must therefore be calculated as a game (a drawn one, because it is an HPB) against a dummy opponent at 3.5 points, i.e., as many as the player themself [16.4]. However, this is a bye on request, and must therefore be the first contribution to be discarded by the Cut modifiers [16.5].

The Buchholz value is therefore BH-C1(#4) = 3.5+3.5+3.0+1.5 = 11.5.

<u>Note</u>: discarding an unplayed round seems to be a disadvantage for the player (by cutting the minimum contribution, here we would get a BH-C1=12.5); in fact, *this rule avoids an unfair advantage* as, without it, a player could skip a round they know they will lose for the sole purpose of improving their Buchholz.

#16	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
16	Stephan	1450	3.5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3
8	Irina	1850	2.5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6
11	Maria	1700	2.5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7
15	Reine	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16
7	Genevieve	1900	1.5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11

The last player played all their games. Among the opponents' unplayed rounds there is only one forfeit win, which is calculated at face value. Discarding the least significant contribution (1.5) we obtain BH C1(#16) = 4.0+2.5+2.5+2.0 = 11.0.

Summarising, the ranking order is #3 (13.0); #4 (11.5); #1, #16 still tied (11.0).

# Exercise 8

In the Swiss tournament, using the Buchholz Cut-1 system, determine the ranking order for players at 2.0 points.

In this exercise we find a situation typical of the low ranking, with several types of unplayed games of different kind. As usual, let's examine the players one by one.

#12	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
12	Nick (W)	1650	2.0	-W4	+BYE	+F14		
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1

The contribution from opponent #4's is calculated at face value, as the requested by in the second round is followed by rounds with availability to play [16.2.3]. Player #12, however, has four unplayed rounds, each of which is calculated as a match with a dummy opponent at 2.0 points, equal to the player's own score [16.4]. One of the contributions from rounds 4 and 5 will be cut (it makes no difference which one, since they are equal), so BH-C1(#12) = 3.5+2.0+2.0+2.0 = 9.5.

#14	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
14	Paul	1550	2.0	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13
6	Franck	1950	3.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8
8	Irina	1850	2.5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6
13	Opal	1600	1.5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14

Once again, the player has unplayed rounds, both valued at 2.0 points, and one of these will be discarded by Cut-1; therefore BH-C1(#14) = 3.0+2.5+2.0+1.5 = 9.0.

#15	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
15	Reine	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4
16	Stephan	1450	3.5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15
5	Helene	2000	2.5	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10
7	Genevieve	1900	1.5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11
10	Lais	1750	1.0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5

The last player has no unplayed game; excluding the least significant contribution (1.0), we obtain BH-C1 = 3.5+3.5+2.5+1.5 = 11.0.

The ranking order is therefore #15 (11.0), #12(9.5), #14(9.0).

# 3.3 Average Buchholz of opponents

The calculation of this tie-break is somewhat more laborious than the previous ones, as it requires the calculation of the Buchholz of all the opponents of the tied players. We can calculate it in two phases: first, we calculate all the necessary Buchholz values and put them in a table; then we calculate averages. For this tie-break, no modifiers are allowed (see rule [5]).

# Exercise 9

In the Swiss tournament, using the Average Buchholz of Opponents (AOB) system, determine the tiebreaker and ranking order for all players.

In this exercise we need to calculate the Buchholz of all players (the reader may want to consider this a useful refresher). First, we should calculate the score adjusted for unplayed rounds. In practice, the score to be used in Buchholz for calculating one's own tie-break is always equal to the score obtained [16.4], so we need only calculate the adjusted scores to be used for opponents' tie-breaks (column AS-O). The techniques are the same used in previous exercises, so we will not go into detail. At this stage, it is most convenient to use the crosstable sorted by pairing numbers.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	AS-O
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4	3.5
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3	4.0
3	Charline	2100	3.5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2	3.5
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1	3.5

5	Helene	2000	2.5	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10	2.5
6	Franck	1950	3.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8	3.0
7	Genevieve	1900	1.5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11	1.5
8	Irina	1850	2.5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6	2.5
9	Jessica	1800	1.5	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE	1.5
10	Lais	1750	1.0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5	1.0
11	Maria	1700	2.5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7	2.5
12	Nick (W)	1650	2.0	-W4	+BYE	+F14			3.0
13	Opal	1600	1.5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14	1.5
14	Paul	1550	2.0	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13	2.0
15	Reine	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16	2.0
16	Stephan	1450	3.5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15	3.5

To avoid trivial errors, let's remember that when calculating the tie-break of a player who has unplayed rounds, we must choose the right contribution between the face value (for themself) and the adjusted one (for opponents, i.e., everyone else). Once all contributions have been determined, we can proceed to their sum, player by player, as in the following table (which has been sorted by score and Buchholz for future convenience).

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	BH
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	1.0	1.5	3.5	3.5	3.5	13.0
3	Charline	2100	3.5	2.5	3.0	2.5	3.5	4.0	15.5
4	David	2050	3.5	3.0	3.5	1.5	3.5	3.5	15.0
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	1.5	1.5	4.0	2.0	3.5	12.5
16	Stephan	1450	3.5	2.5	2.5	1.5	4.0	2.0	12.5
6	Franck	1950	3.0	2.0	3.5	3.0	1.0	2.5	12.0
8	Irina	1850	2.5	3.5	2.0	3.5	1.5	3.0	13.5
11	Maria	1700	2.5	3.5	3.5	2.5	2.5	1.5	13.5
5	Helene	2000	2.5	1.5	2.0	2.5	1.5	1.0	8.5
15	Reine	1500	2.0	1.5	2.5	1.0	3.5	3.5	12.0
12	Nick (W)	1650	2.0	3.5	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	11.5
14	Paul	1550	2.0	3.0	2.5	2.0	2.0	1.5	11.0
7	Genevieve	1900	1.5	2.0	4.0	3.5	2.5	2.5	14.5
13	Opal	1600	1.5	2.5	3.5	3.5	2.5	2.0	14.0
9	Jessica	1800	1.5	3.5	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5	9.0
10	Lais	1750	1.0	4.0	1.5	2.0	3.0	2.5	13.0

Now we calculate the average of the opponents' Buchholz values, keeping in mind that we should add only those opponents who were actually met on-the-board [8.2]. To avoid false ties caused by number rounding, we calculate the averages to two decimal places. Finally, we sort the list to get the ranking.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	BH	AOB
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	13.0	14.5	12.5	12.5	15.5	13.0	13.60
3	Charline	2100	3.5	13.5	12.0	13.5	15.0	13.0	15.5	13.40
4	David	2050	3.5	11.5		14.0	15.5	12.5	15.0	13.38
16	Stephan	1450	3.5	13.5	13.5	14.5	13.0	12.0	12.5	13.30
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	9.0	14.0	13.0	12.0	15.0	12.5	12.60
6	Franck	1950	3.0	11.0	15.5		13.0	13.5	12.0	13.25
5	Helene	2000	2.5	14.0	12.0	13.5	14.5	13.0	8.5	13.40
8	Irina	1850	2.5	12.5	11.0	15.5	14.0	12.0	13.5	13.00
11	Maria	1700	2.5	15.5	12.5	8.5		14.5	13.5	12.75
12	Nick (W)	1650	2.0	15.0					11.5	15.00
14	Paul	1550	2.0	12.0	13.5			14.0	11.0	13.17
15	Reine	1500	2.0	14.5	8.5	13.0	12.5	12.5	12.0	12.20
9	Jessica	1800	1.5	12.5	13.0				9.0	12.75
13	Opal	1600	1.5	8.5	12.5	15.0	13.5	11.0	14.0	12.10
7	Genevieve	1900	1.5	12.0	13.0	12.5	8.5	13.5	14.5	11.90
10	Lais	1750	1.0	13.0	9.0	12.0	12.0	8.5	13.0	10.90

# 3.4 Fore Buchholz

The essential feature of this tie-break is that it (as well as, for example, ARO) can be calculated as soon as the pairing of the last round is known, even before it is actually played. Modifiers can be applied to this tiebreaker, but here we will limit ourselves to an example of a total Fore Buchholz.

# Exercise 10

# In the Swiss tournament, using the Fore Buchholz (FB) system, determine the tie-break values and ranking order for all players.

The key feature of the system is all the last round games are considered as drawn (they may not have been played yet). Of course, *planned* unplayed games, being known *before* the round, will be considered as in reality – there is no need to make assumptions about their conclusion!

Now, by definition, the "final" score used for the tie-break calculation is not the real one. We therefore highlighted (in red) the scores that differ from the real results – and (of course) there are several of them. The score adjusted for opponents can also be different, also because the definition itself of this tie-break "conceals" any forfeits in the last round.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	AS-O
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3	4.0
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4	3.5
3	Charline	2100	3.5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2	3.5
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1	3.5
16	Stephan	1450	3.0	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	=W15	3.0
6	Franck	1950	2.5	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	=B8	2.5
5	Helene	2000	2.0	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	=W10	2.0
8	Irina	1850	3.0	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	=W6	3.0
11	Maria	1700	2.0	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	=W7	2.0
12	Nick (W)	1650	2.0	-W4	+BYE	+F14			3.0
14	Paul	1550	1.5	+W6	-B8	-F12		=B13	1.5
15	Reine	1500	2.5	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	=B16	2.5
7	Genevieve	1900	2.0	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	=B11	2.0
9	Jessica	1800	1.5	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE	1.5
13	Opal	1600	2.0	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	=W14	2.0
10	Lais	1750	1.5	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	=B5	1.5

Having determined the contributions of each player for their opponents, we now proceed to calculate the tie-break values, using the same method as in the previous exercise. Rearranging then our crosstable based on the tie-break values, we obtain:

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	FB
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	1.5	2.0	3.5	3.0	3.5	13.5
3	Charline	2100	3.5	2.0	2.5	3.0	3.5	4.0	15.0
4	David	2050	3.5	3.0	2.0	2.0	3.5	3.5	14.0
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	1.5	2.0	4.0	2.5	3.5	13.5
16	Stephan	1450	3.0	3.0	2.0	2.0	4.0	2.5	13.5
8	Irina	1850	3.0	3.0	1.5	3.5	2.0	2.5	12.5
6	Franck	1950	2.5	1.5	3.5	2.5	1.5	3.0	12.0
15	Reine	1500	2.5	2.0	2.0	1.5	3.5	3.0	12.0
5	Helene	2000	2.0	2.0	2.5	2.0	2.0	1.5	10.0
11	Maria	1700	2.0	3.5	3.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	12.5
12	Nick (W)	1650	2.0	3.5	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	11.5
14	Paul	1550	1.5	2.5	3.0	1.5	1.5	2.0	10.5
7	Genevieve	1900	2.0	2.5	4.0	3.0	2.0	2.0	13.5
9	Jessica	1800	1.5	3.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	9.5
13	Opal	1600	2.0	2.0	3.5	3.5	3.0	1.5	13.5
10	Lais	1750	1.5	4.0	1.5	2.5	2.5	2.0	12.5

#### \*\*\*\*

Let's close this chapter with an interesting comparison of the rankings produced by the various systems; the following table shows the ranking of each player, identified by their pairing number. Unresolved ties are highlighted. These instances require further tie-breakers, or the drawing of lots, to determine final standings.

		Final Rankings														
	1	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16														
BH	2	З	4	1	16	6	8	11	5	15	12	14	7	13	9	10
BH-C1	2	3	4	1	16	6	8	11	5	15	12	14	7	13	9	10
AOB	2	4	3	16	1	6	5	8	11	12	14	15	9	13	7	10
FB	2	2 3 4 1 16 8 6 15 5 11 12 14 7 9 13 10														

We can see that the generated rankings vary, potentially influencing the allocation of titles and prizes. Moreover, none of these systems has successfully resolved all ties.

The diagram below illustrates the variations in the final ranking position for each player (horizontal axis), determined by the tie-break system used.



# 4 **TIE-BREAKS WITH SONNEBORN-BERGER AND KOYA SYSTEMS**

Contrary to Buchholz, the Sonneborn-Berger (SB) system can be used both for Swiss tournaments and for round-robins, although it is not the most suitable option for the former. For Sonneborn-Berger, the same modifiers applicable to the Buchholz can be used (especially the Cut-1, while it makes no sense to use the Median), but the use of variants of the SB with modifiers is rare.

On the other hand, the Koya system is specifically defined for round-robin tournaments. If an organizer intends to use it in a Swiss tournament, it must be explicitly defined in the event regulations [4.1]). The Koya system allows for the use of the Limit modifier.

# 4.1 Sonneborn-Berger for Swiss tournaments

In the Sonneborn-Berger system [9.1], the results of opponents are combined with those of the player in such a way that the opponent's score has less weight in the case of a draw and is effectively ignored in the case of a loss. *Unlike Buchholz, a defeat against a strong player does not contribute in any way in this system*. On one hand, this system acknowledges that there is no special merit in losing to a Grandmaster; on the other hand, a player of average skill who happens to face several extremely strong players would be

penalized without any real fault of their own. As is often the case with tie-breaks, the interpretation of the meaning of the system used, and therefore its fairness, *is more of a philosophical than a technical matter*. However, in principle, the choice of tie-breaks is up to the event organizer, and the player can decide whether to participate after reviewing the rules.

We will now see some examples similar to those used for Buchholz, so we will be able to compare the results and get an idea of the different behaviour between the two systems.

# Exercise 11

In the Swiss tournament, using the Sonneborn-Berger (SB) system, determine the tiebreak values and ranking order for the players at 3.5 points.

Affected players are #1, #3, #4, #16. The management rules for unplayed rounds are the same as in the case of Buchholz; in SB, however, for correct application, it is essential to clearly understand the difference between the opponent's value, which is their score, and their contribution to the tie-break [9.1].

The opponent's contribution is each addend that must be added to obtain the value of the tie-break. It is given by the product between the opponent's score and the result obtained against them (the contributions of the opponents with which the player lost are therefore all null). This should not be confused with the value itself.

Here, the only score that must be adjusted for the calculation of the opponents' tie-break is that of player #12, who withdrew from the fourth round on (see Exercise 4).

#1	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1
15	Reine	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16
9	Jessica	1800	1.5	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE
13	Opal	1600	1.5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14

As usual, let's examine the players and their opponents one by one.

Player #1 played all of their games; furthermore, their opponents' unplayed rounds are all to be counted at face value [16.3.1]. To avoid errors, in the calculations we'd better follow the sequence of opponents as shown on the crosstable; this player's tiebreak is therefore  $SB(#1) = 1*1.5+\frac{1}{2}*1.5+\frac{1}{2}*4.0+1*2.0+\frac{1}{2}*3.5 = 8.00.$ 

#3	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
3	Charline	2100	3.5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1
6	Franck	1950	3.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8
8	Irina	1850	2.5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6
11	Maria	1700	2.5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7

Let's now consider player #3. Their opponents' unplayed rounds are all accounted for at face value, and therefore SB(#3) =  $\frac{1}{2}$ \*2.5+1\*3.0+1\*2.5+ $\frac{1}{2}$ \*3.5+ $\frac{1}{2}$ \*4.0 = 10.50.

#16	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
16	Stephan	1450	3.5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3
8	Irina	1850	2.5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6
11	Maria	1700	2.5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7
15	Reine	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16
7	Genevieve	1900	1.5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11

Going on to player #16, again nothing changes, and we find

 $SB(#16) = \frac{1}{2} \times 2.5 + 1 \times 2.5 + 1 \times 1.5 + 0 \times 4.0 + 1 \times 2.0 = 7.25.$ 

#4	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5
4	David	2050	3.5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1
1	Alyx	2200	3.5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4
3	Charline	2100	3.5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2
12	Nick (W)	1650	2.0	-W4	+BYE	+F14		
13	Opal	1600	1.5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14

Finally, player #4 got a half-point bye, and met the withdrawn player. The half-point bye on request provides them with a value equal to their score, i.e., 3.5 points, as per the crosstable. Let's be careful, however: to obtain the *contribute* of the (dummy) opponent, this value must be multiplied by the equivalent result of the round, which is a draw [16.4].

The contribution of the withdrawn opponent is calculated, as we saw above, by evaluating the unplayed rounds since the withdrawal as draws. It is therefore worth 3.0 points. So

 $SB(#4) = 1*3.0 + \frac{1}{2}*3.5 + 1*1.5 + \frac{1}{2}*3.5 + \frac{1}{2}*3.5 = 9.75.$ 

The ranking therefore is #3 (10.50), #4 (9.75), #1 (8.00) and #16 (7.25).

# Exercise 12

In the Swiss tournament, using the Sonneborn-Berger (SB) system, determine the tiebreak values and ranking order for all players.

For each player, we calculate the score adjusted for opponents' tie-break, and put it in the "AS" column we added to the crosstable. Then we can calculate the contribution given by each opponent's score – for clarity, we explicitly show the product between the player's result and the opponent's score. The last column of the table contains the sum of all the contributions, i.e., the tie-break value; all that remains to do, is to sort players to yield the final ranking.

Methodological note: For this exercise and the following ones, the reader is strongly encouraged to start from the table presented in paragraph 2.1, perform the calculation independently, and only then compare it with the one reported here to verify its accuracy.

#	NAME	SCORE	AS	1	2	3	4	5	SB
h	Drupo	4.0	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3	0 50
2	bruno	4.0	4.0	1*1.0	1*1.5	1⁄2*3.5	1*3.5	1⁄2*3.5	9.50
2	Charling	2 5	2 5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2	10 50
5	Chanine	3.5	5.5	1⁄2*2.5	1*3.0	1*2.5	1⁄2*3.5	<sup>1</sup> ⁄2*4.0	10.50
1	David	2 5	2 5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1	0.75
4	Daviu	5.5	5.5	1*3.0	1⁄2*3.5	1*1.5	1⁄2*3.5	1⁄2*3.5	9.75
1	Aboy	2 5	2 5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4	0 00
T	Аіух	5.5	5.5	1*1.5	1⁄2*1.5	1⁄2*4.0	1*2.0	1⁄2*3.5	0.00
16	Stophan	25	25	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15	7 25
10	Stephan	5.5	J.J	1⁄2*2.5	1*2.5	1*1.5	0*4.0	1*2.0	7.25
6	Franck	3.0	3.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8	6 50
0	TIANCK	5.0	5.0	0*2.0	0*3.5	1*3.0	1*1.0	1*2.5	0.50
11	Maria	2 5	2 5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7	5 75
TT	Maha	2.5	2.5	1⁄2*3.5	0*3.5	0*2.5	1*2.5	1*1.5	5.75
0	Tripo	2 5	2 5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6	
0	11111a	2.5	2.5	1⁄2*3.5	1*2.0	0*3.5	1*1.5	0*3.0	5.25
F	Holono	2 5	ר ב	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10	4 25
5	пејејје	2.5	2.5	0*1.5	0*2.0	1*2.5	1⁄2*1.5	1*1.0	4.25
14	Doul	2.0	20	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13	1 50
14	Paul	2.0	2.0	1*3.0	0*2.5	0*2.0	0*2.0	1*1.5	4.50
12	Nick (W)	2.0	20	-W4	+BYE	+F14			1 00
12	NICK (VV)	2.0	5.0	0*3.5	1*2.0	1*2.0	0*2.0	0*2.0	4.00
15	Doino	2.0	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16	2 50
15	Reine	2.0	2.0	0*1.5	1*2.5	1*1.0	0*3.5	0*3.5	5.50
12	Onal	1 5	1 5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14	1 25
12	Opai	1.5	1.5	1*2.5	1⁄2*3.5	0*3.5	0*2.5	0*2.0	4.25
7	Conoviovo	1 5	1 5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11	2 25
/	Genevieve	1.5	1.5	1*2.0	0*4.0	0*3.5	1⁄2*2.5	0*2.5	5.25
0	lossica	1 5	1 5	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE	2.25
9	JESSICA	1.5	1.5	0*3.5	0*1.0	1⁄2*1.5	0*1.5	1*1.5	2.23
10	Laic	1.0	1.0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5	1 50
10	Lais	1.0	1.0	0*4.0	1*1.5	0*2.0	0*3.0	0*2.5	1.50

In the Swiss tournament, using the Sonneborn-Berger Cut-1 (SB-C1) system, determine the tie-break values and ranking order for all players.

The application of the Cut-1 modifier [14.1] to the Sonneborn-Berger system is, in practice, a novelty, but it but it may possibly become more widespread over time.

The modifier requires disregarding, among all opponent contributions, the least significant one and, once again, this corresponds to the opponent with the lowest score [14.1.1].

Now, however, since the opponent's contribution, i.e., the value to be actually added, also depends on the player's result, the least significant value may not be the one that gives rise to the smallest contribution. For instance, a draw against a three-point opponent is worth 1.5, which is smaller than the contribution of a win against a two-point opponent (2.0); however, the least significant value is the latter, and *this is the one to cut*.

If two or more opponents share the minimum score, the opponent that gives the smallest contribution to the player will be cut. For example, if both "less significant" opponents have two points, and the player has won against one while losing or drawing against the other, the latter will be cut.

When the player has one or more unplayed rounds due to their unavailability (forfeit losses; requested byes; scheduled absences) [16.1.2], the Cut-1 instead cuts one of these (two in the case of Cut-2, and so on) – but only if the corresponding contribution is not less than the least significant value [16.5]; in this latter case, the exception does not apply, and the opponent with the least significant value is cut.

<u>Note</u>: among voluntarily unplayed rounds (VUR), only half-point byes (HPB) bring a non-zero contribution, while forfeits and zero-point byes always give a null contribution. The round to be cut is determined by finding (1) the smallest contribution due to a VUR and (2) the contribution due to the least significant opponent (whether real or dummy), which is always the one with the lowest score. The largest between these two is the one to be discarded.

As in the previous exercise, let's calculate all the opponents' values for each player; this time however, before performing the sum, we need to cut a value from the calculation (in the ensuing table, the cut values relating to played games are highlighted in blue, while those relating to unplayed rounds are in red).

#	NAME	SCORE	AS	1	2	3	4	5	SB-C1
2	Prupo	4.0	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3	0 50
2	DIUNO	4.0	4.0	1*1.0	1*1.5	1⁄2*3.5	1*3.5	1⁄2*3.5	0.50
2	Charling	2 5	2 5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2	0.25
3	Channe	5.5	5.5	1⁄2*2.5	1*3.0	1*2.5	1⁄2*3.5	1⁄2*4.0	9.25
1	David	2 5	2 5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1	0 00
т	Daviu	5.5	5.5	1*3.0	1⁄2*3.5	1*1.5	1⁄2*3.5	1⁄2*3.5	0.00
1	Aboy	25	25	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4	7 25
T	Ацух	5.5	5.5	1*1.5	1⁄2*1.5	1⁄2*4.0	1*2.0	1⁄2*3.5	7.25
16	Stophon	2 5	2 5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15	5 75
10	Stephan	5.5	5.5	1⁄2*2.5	1*2.5	1*1.5	0*4.0	1*2.0	5.75
6	Franck	20	2.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8	E E0
0	FIGHCK	5.0	5.0	0*2.0	0*3.5	1*3.0	1*1.0	1*2.5	5.50
11	Maria	2 5	2 5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7	1 25
11	Maha	2.5	2.5	1⁄2*3.5	0*3.5	0*2.5	1*2.5	1*1.5	4.25
0	Tripo	2 5	2 5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6	2 75
0	11111a	2.5	2.5	1⁄2*3.5	1*2.0	0*3.5	1*1.5	0*3.0	5.75
F	Holono	2 5	2 5	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10	2 25
5	пејене	2.5	2.5	0*1.5	0*2.0	1*2.5	1⁄2*1.5	1*1.0	5.25
12	Nick (W)	20	3.0	-W4	+BYE	+F14			1 00
12	NICK (VV)	2.0	5.0	0*3.5	1*2.0	1*2.0	0*2.0	0*2.0	4.00
1/	Paul	20	20	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13	3 00
14	Paul	2.0	2.0	1*3.0	0*2.5	0*2.0	0*2.0	1*1.5	5.00
15	Poino	20	20	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16	2 50
13	Reine	2.0	2.0	0*1.5	1*2.5	1*1.0	0*3.5	0*3.5	2.30
12	Onal	15	15	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14	1 25
13	Opai	1.5	1.5	1*2.5	1⁄2*3.5	0*3.5	0*2.5	0*2.0	т.23

7 Genevi	Conoviovo	1 5	1 5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11	1 25
/	Genevieve	1.5	1.5	1*2.0	0*4.0	0*3.5	1⁄2*2.5	0*2.5	1.25
0	lossica	1 5	1 5	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE	2.25
9	Jessica	1.5	1.5	0*3.5	0*1.0	1⁄2*1.5	0*1.5	1*1.5	2.25
10	Laic	1.0	1.0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5	0.00
10	Lais	1.0	1.0	0*4.0	1*1.5	0*2.0	0*3.0	0*2.5	0.00

To clarify better, let's see the choice of the value to discard for some players:

- #2 the least significant contribution, and therefore the one to be discarded, is due to opponent #10, who obtained the lowest score
- #4 we have a contribution of 1.75 points due to an HPB, while the least significant among those due to the opponents (precisely, at #13) is worth 1.50 points. The larger of the two is discarded, which is the one relating to the HPB
- #6 the least significant contribution, the one to be discarded, is due to opponent #10, with whom the player won; the minimum contribution instead would be the one due to #14, but *this opponent is not the least significant and should not be discarded*
- #14 here there is a contribution due to the forfeit or scheduled absence (it makes no difference, they are both null); the least significant value is that due to opponent #13 and the relative contribution is worth 1.50 points. We discard the larger value, which in this case is the one due to the *actually played game*
- #12 there is a zero contribution due to a scheduled absence (fourth or fifth round, it makes no difference which of the two please note that the PAB and the forfeit win are not rounds without availability to play). The least significant are still those due to these unplayed rounds because the dummy opponent has the lowest score. The round to be discarded is therefore one of these two, and its contribution is zero
- #9 between the two rounds without availability to play (VUR), the minimum contribution is zero due to the forfeit defeat (the HPB instead gives a contribution of 0.75 points); the one relating to the least significant value is due to opponent #10, and is also worth zero, so the first one is discarded

# 4.2 Sonneborn-Berger in round-robin tournaments

In round-robins, which are tournaments with predetermined pairings, unplayed games can only be won or lost by forfeit. They are treated on a par with regularly played games [15.6], so it is never necessary to adjust the scores obtained. Apart from this, there is no substantial difference as compared to what we did in the case of the Swiss tournament.

# Exercise 14

In the Round-robin tournament determine the tie-break values and ranking order for all players using the Sonneborn-Berger (SB) system.

As we did before, we insert the contributions of the individual matches into the crosstable; note that the 5-6 game, awarded by forfeit, is treated just like all other games.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	SB
1	Abox	2200	2 5	=W5	+W2	+B3	-W4	+B6	0.25
T	Аіух	2200	5.5	1⁄2*1.5	1*3.5	1*3.5	0*1.5	1*1.5	9.25
2	Drupo	2150	2 5	+W6	-B1	+W5	=W3	+B4	6.25
Z	Druno	2150	5.5	1*1.5	0*3.5	1*1.5	1⁄2*3.5	1*1.5	0.25
2	Charling	2100	2 5	+W4	+B6	-W1	=B2	+W5	6 25
5	Chanine	2100	5.5	1*1.5	1*1.5	0*3.5	1⁄2*3.5	1*1.5	0.25
Δ	David	2050	1 5	-B3	-B5	=W6	+B1	-W2	4 25
4	Daviu	2050	1.5	0*3.5	0*1.5	1⁄2*1.5	1*3.5	0*3.5	4.25
F	Franck	1050	1 5	=B1	+W4	-B2	-W6	-B3	2.25
5	FIGLICK	1950	1.5	1⁄2*3.5	1*1.5	0*3.5	0*1.5	0*3.5	5.25
6	Holono	2000	1 5	-B2	-W3	=B4	+B5	-W1	2.25
0	пенене	2000	1.5	0*3.5	0*3.5	1⁄2*1.5	1*1.5	0*3.5	2.25

# Exercise 15

In the Round-robin tournament determine the tie-break values and ranking order for all players using the Sonneborn-Berger Cut-1 (SB-C1) system.

As mentioned, here we do not need to apply adjustments to unplayed games. Since we use the Cut-1 modifier, for each player we will cut the contribution of the least significant opponent (the one with the lowest score) – and, when scores are equal, we cut the lower of those contributions [14.1.1] (the cut round is highlighted in blue on the crosstable).

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	SB-C1
1	Aboy	2200	2 5	=W5	+W2	+B3	-W4	+B6	0.25
T	Аіух	2200	5.5	1⁄2*1.5	1*3.5	1*3.5	0*1.5	1*1.5	9.25
2	Prupo	2150	2 5	+W6	-B1	+W5	=W3	+B4	1 75
Z	DIUNO	2150	5.5	1*1.5	0*3.5	1*1.5	1⁄2*3.5	1*1.5	4.75
2	Charling	2100	2 5	+W4	+B6	-W1	=B2	+W5	1 7E
2	Channe	2100	5.5	1*1.5	1*1.5	0*3.5	1⁄2*3.5	1*1.5	4.75
Λ	David	2050	1 5	-B3	-B5	=W6	+B1	-W2	1 25
7	Daviu	2050	1.5	0*3.5	0*1.5	1⁄2*1.5	1*3.5	0*3.5	4.25
F	Franck	1050	1 5	=B1	+W4	-B2	-W6	-B3	2 75
5	FIGLICK	1920	1.5	1⁄2*3.5	1*1.5	0*3.5	0*1.5	0*3.5	5.25
6	Holono	2000	1 5	-B2	-W3	=B4	+B5	-W1	1 50
0	пенене	2000	1.5	0*3.5	0*3.5	1⁄2*1.5	1*1.5	0*3.5	1.50

(Please note that the ranking order is the same obtained without Cut 1 just by a coincidence.)

# 4.3 Koya System

The Koya system is defined only for round-robin tournaments. This does not mean that its use in a Swiss tournament is forbidden – but Organisers who intend to use it must define it in their tournament rules ([4.1]). An Arbiter however cannot introduce it as an additional tie-break because they can choose only among the methods listed in [5].

In the round-robin tournament, determine the tie-break values and the rankings for all players using the Koya system (KS). In case of persistent ties, apply the Limit modifier to each group of tied players until achieving, if possible, a unique ranking.

In the Koya system, we sum the points obtained by each player against opponents who scored at least half of the maximum possible [9.2] – in our case, 5/2=2.5 points. For clarity, we record all contributions due to players with a sufficient score along with the achieved result, while we marked the results against opponents with a score below the required minimum with a "—".

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	SB-C1
1	Aboy	2200	2 5	=W5	+W2	+B3	-W4	+B6	2.0
T	Аіух	2200	5.5	—	1	1	—	—	2.0
h	Drupo	2150	2 5	+W6	-B1	+W5	=W3	+B4	0.5
Z	Druno	2150	3.5	_	0	_	1/2	_	0.5
2	Charling	2100	ЭΓ	+W4	+B6	-W1	=B2	+W5	
3	Charline	2100	3.5	_	—	0	1⁄2	—	0.5
4	David	2050	4 F	-B3	-B5	=W6	+B1	-W2	1.0
4	David	2050	1.5	0	—	_	1	0	1.0
F	Franck	1050	1 F	=B1	+W4	-B2	-W6	-B3	<u>о г</u>
5	ггалск	1920	1.5	1/2	—	0	—	0	0.5
c	Holono	2000	1 5	-B2	-W3	=B4	+B5	-W1	0.0
0	пејене	2000	1.5	0	0	_		0	0.0

The tie between players #2 and #3 persists, so we will try to apply the Limit modifier [14.5] to these two players. Since the players are divided into only two groups with the same score, increasing the score limit by half a point at a time is useless, as at some point the contributions will simply be all ignored. By decreasing the limit score by half a point at a time, however, we will reach the point where all the results obtained will be considered, so the sum of the contributions becomes equal to the score. In conclusion, with the Koya system it is not possible to break this tie; we will have to resort to the next tie-break method provided for by the tournament regulations, or to the drawing of sorts [4.2].

\*\*\*\*

At the end of the chapter, let's compare the outcomes in the Swiss tournament obtained using the tie-break systems examined thus far, which are commonly employed in these competitions. The following table, sorted according to the Buchholz system, illustrates the player's ranking given by each tie-break method, with different colours denoting positions to help a quick visual comparison of the different systems (matching colours show unsettled ties).

Sonneborn-Berger systems yield fewer persisting ties than systems relying on Buchholz. This seems to show a better discriminatory capacity, although further evidence is needed. The ability to distinctly differentiate between tied players is of course a positive attribute of a tie-break system - indeed, it is its primary purpose. However, discrimination alone is not enough – it must also be done *well*, meaning that the resulting ranking should ideally

reflect the players' playing strength expressed in the tournament. Yet, this discussion delves into a very complex issue that extends far beyond our objectives.

RNK	#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	BH	BH-C1	AOB	FB	SB	SB-C1
1	2	Bruno	2150	4,0	13,0	12,0	13,6	13,5	9,50	8,50
2	3	Charline	2100	3,5	15,5	13,0	13,4	15,0	10,50	9,25
3	4	David	2050	3,5	15,0	11,5	13,4	14,0	9,75	8,00
4	1	Alyx	2200	3,5	12,5	11,0	12,6	13,5	8,00	7,25
5	16	Stephan	1450	3,5	12,5	11,0	13,3	13,5	7,25	5,75
6	6	Franck	1950	3,0	12,0	11,0	13,3	12,0	6,50	5,50
7	8	Irina	1850	2,5	13,5	12,0	13,0	12,5	5,25	3,75
8	11	Maria	1700	2,5	13,5	12,0	12,8	12,5	5,75	4,25
9	5	Helene	2000	2,5	8,5	7,5	13,4	10,0	4,25	3,25
10	15	Reine	1500	2,0	12,0	11,0	12,2	12,0	3,50	2,50
11	12	Nick (W)	1650	2,0	11,5	9,5	15,0	11,5	4,00	4,00
12	14	Paul	1550	2,0	11,0	9,0	13,2	10,5	4,50	3,00
13	7	Genevieve	1900	1,5	14,5	12,5	11,9	13,5	3,25	1,25
14	13	Opal	1600	1,5	14,0	12,0	12,1	13,5	4,25	4,25
15	9	Jessica	1800	1,5	9,0	7,5	12,8	9,5	2,25	2,25
16	10	Lais	1750	1,0	13,0	11,5	10,9	12,5	1,50	0,00
		Kov: 1	2 2	1 5 6	7 0	0 10 11	12 12	14 15 1		

## **5 TIE-BREAK SYSTEMS BASED ON RATING AND PERFORMANCE**

Whenever unrated players are involved, these tie-breaks are undefined and *should therefore be removed from the tie-break list*. However, Organisers can use them if they wish so, provided that they clearly define the rules for the management of such players in the tournament regulations. Alternatively, the chief arbiter of the tournament can establish these rules and make them public *before the tournament begins*. In either case, those rules must be:

- Impartial (based solely on the chess-related characteristics of the player)
- Fair (should not personally favour or disadvantage any player)
- Comprehensive (must handle all possible cases)
- Unambiguous (should leave no doubts about application in every possible scenario)

All tie-breaks in this category are based solely on games *actually played* on-the-board, while unplayed games are ignored. For example, for a player who missed two games in a nine-round tournament, only the seven valid results are considered, and the average is calculated by dividing by seven (not nine!).

When ratings have decimals (e.g., in averages), the result is always rounded to the nearest whole number, following the convention 4/5 ( $3.4 \rightarrow 3$ , but  $3.5 \rightarrow 4$ ).

# 5.1 Average Rating of opponents (ARO)

This is the average of all the ratings of the opponents who were actually met on-the-board [10.1]; When ratings are reliable, we can assume this average to be a good estimate of the strength of the encountered opposition –the underlying idea being that the same score achieved against stronger opposition carries greater merit.

This tie-break is independent of the achieved results and can therefore be calculated even while the round is still in progress – the only required information is that the game has actually taken place. In a tournament with predetermined pairings, such as a round-robin, where unplayed games are treated the same as played ones, this tie-break can even be calculated at the beginning of the tournament (and favours lower rated players).

For this tie-break, unique in its category, the Cut modifier can be applied.

## Exercise 17

In the Swiss tournament, using the ARO system, determine the tie-break values and ranking order for all players.

As usual, we start from the crosstable, adding data as needed – here, we need all the opponents' ratings. The average is calculated adding up all valid contributions and then dividing by their number – while all unplayed rounds are completely ignored.

As an example, let's see in detail the calculations for player #4. Their opponents are #12 (rating 1650), #13 (1600), #3 (2100) and #1 (2200). The unplayed game in the second round is discarded.

The average of ratings (ARO) is given by the sum of opponents rating divided by their number: ARO = (1650+1600+2100+2200)/4. Hence, ARO =  $7550/4 = 1887, 5 \rightarrow 1888$ . The calculation of the ARO for all other players, which is carried out using the same procedure, is left as an exercise for the reader.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	ARO
2	Brupo	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3	1000
Z	DI UNO	2150	4.0	1750	1900	2200	1450	2100	1000
2	Charling	2100	2 5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2	1040
3	Charline	2100	5.5	1700	1950	1850	2050	2150	1940
Λ	David	2050	2 5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1	1000
4	Daviu	2050	5.5	1650		1600	2100	2200	1000
1	Abox	2200	2 5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4	1020
T	АІУХ	2200	5.5	1800	1600	2150	1500	2050	1020
16	Stophon	1/50	2 5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15	1020
10	Stephan	1450	5.5	1850	1700	1900	2150	1500	1020
6	Franck	1050	20	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8	1012
0	FIGLICK	1920	5.0	1550	2100		1750	1850	1015
11	Maria	1700	2 5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7	1062
ТТ	Maria	1700	2.5	2100	1450	2000		1900	1005
0	Tripo	1050	2 5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6	1720
0	111110	1020	2.5	1450	1550	2100	1600	1950	1/30
F	Holono	2000	2 5	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10	1600
5	пенене	2000	2.5	1600	1500	1700	1900	1750	1090

10	Nick (W/)	1650	2.0	-W4	+BYE	+F14			2050																		
12	INICK (VV)	1020	2.0	2050					2050																		
15	Doino	1500	20	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16	1060																		
15	Reifie	1200	2.0	1900	2000	1750	2200	1450	1000																		
14	Doul	1550	20	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13	1000																		
14	Paul	1550	2.0	1950	1850			1600	1000																		
0	loccica	1000	1 5	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE	1075																		
9	Jessica	1000	1.5	2200	1750				1975																		
12	Onal	1600	1 5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14	1020																		
12	Opai	1000	1.5	2000	2200	2050	1850	1550	1920																		
7	Conquiava	1000	1 5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11	1760																		
/	Genevieve	1900	1.5	1500	2150	1450	2000	1700	1700																		
10	Laic	1750	10	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5	1000																		
10	0 Lais 1/50	1750	1750	1750	1750	1750	1750	1750	1750	1750	1750	1750	1750	1750	1750	1750	1750	1750	1750	1.0	2150	1800	1500	1950	2000	1880	

In the Swiss tournament, using the ARO Cut-1 system (AROC), determine the tie-break values and ranking order for all players.

The only difference from the previous exercise is the choice of the contribution to be cut, which is always the one related to the least significant result. In the case of AROC, which is based on ratings, the least significant encounter is that with the lowest rated opponent. This contribution must therefore be the one to be discarded before calculating the average.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	ARO
C	Drupo	2150	10	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3	1000
2	DI UNO	2150	4.0	1750	1900	2200	1450	2100	1900
2	Charling	2100	2 5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2	2000
S	Charline	2100	5.5	1700	1950	1850	2050	2150	2000
Λ	David	2050	2 5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1	1002
4	Daviu	2050	5.5	1650		1600	2100	2200	1902
1	Abox	2200	2 5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4	1000
T	Аіух	2200	5.5	1800	1600	2150	1500	2050	1900
16	Stophan	1/150	3 5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15	1000
10	Stephan	1400	5.5	1850	1700	1900	2150	1500	1900
6	Franck	1050	3.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8	1000
0	FIGHCK	1920	5.0	1550	2100	-	1750	1850	1900
11	Maria	1700	25	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7	2000
11	Maria	1700	2.5	2100	1450	2000		1900	2000
Q	Tripo	1950	25	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6	1200
0	111110	1000	2.5	1450	1550	2100	1600	1950	1000
5	Holono	2000	25	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10	1720
5	TIEIEITE	2000	2.5	1600	1500	1700	1900	1750	1/30
15	Poino	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16	1062
13	Keine	1300	2.0	1900	2000	1750	2200	1450	1905
1/	Daul	1550	2.0	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13	1000
14	Faul	1330	2.0	1950	1850			1600	1900
12	Nick (W)	1650	2.0	-W4	+BYE	+F14			0
12		1050	2.0	2050					0
٥	lessica	1800	15	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE	2200
9	JESSICa	1000	1.5	2200	1750				2200
12	Onal	1600	15	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14	2025
12	Opai	1000	1.5	2000	2200	2050	1850	1550	2025

7	Conoviovo	1000	1 5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11	1020
7 Genevieve	1900	1.5	1500	2150	1450	2000	1700	1020	
10	Laic	1750	1.0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5	1075
10	Lais	1/20	1.0	2150	1800	1500	1950	2000	19/2

For player #12, who played only one game, after the cut there is nothing left to calculate a tie-break value. Hence, their ARO is *undefined*. Incidentally, there is no definite rule to handle this case.

# 5.2 Performance rating in the tournament (TPR)

The aim of this tie-break is to estimate (approximately) how well a competitor has played based on their results, in relation to the opponents' playing strength as represented by their ratings.

When two players face each other, the expected score (i.e., the statistical probability of winning) is determined by the difference between their ratings, as per the table in section 8.1.1 of the *FIDE Rating Regulations* (FIDE Handbook B.02). If a player faced several opponents and achieved a given average score, the table provides the corresponding rating difference for that average score. The performance value is obtained by adding this rating difference to the player's ARO, and it is an approximate estimate of the rating that the player would have needed to achieve those results against that opposition (for more details see the in-depth box on the next page).

<u>Note</u>: if two players obtained equal *over-the-board* scores, the rating difference is of course the same. The ranking yielded by this method is therefore the very same given by ARO. However, this is not always the case, because the same final score can be obtained with different contributions by unplayed rounds, which the tie-breaker disregards.

## What is the meaning of TPR?

To clarify the meaning of TPR, let's calculate the expected score of a player, say #2, assuming a rating equal to the performance. To do that, we need to find the rating differences with respect to each opponent met, then we proceed to find the expected score for each game using the table in B.02-8.1.2 (see below), which is the mirror image of the table mentioned above.

d	d	р	d	d	р	d	d	р	d	d	р
Rtg Dif	Н	L	Rtg Dif	Н	L	Rtg Dif	Н	L	Rtg Dif	Η	L
0-3	.50	.50	92-98	.63	.37	198-206	.76	.24	345-357	.89	.11
4-10	.51	.49	99-106	.64	.36	207-215	.77	.23	358-374	.90	.10
11-17	.52	.48	107-113	.65	.35	216-225	.78	.22	375-391	.91	.09
18-25	.53	.47	114-121	.66	.34	226-235	.79	.21	392-411	.92	.08
26-32	.54	.46	122-129	.67	.33	236-245	.80	.20	412-432	.93	.07
33-39	.55	.45	130-137	.68	.32	246-256	.81	.19	433-456	.94	.06
40-46	.56	.44	138-145	.69	.31	257-267	.82	.18	457-484	.95	.05
47-53	.57	.43	146-153	.70	.30	268-278	.83	.17	485-517	.96	.04
54-61	.58	.42	154-162	.71	.29	279-290	.84	.16	518-559	.97	.03
62-68	.59	.41	163-170	.72	.28	291-302	.85	.15	560-619	.98	.02
69-76	.60	.40	171-179	.73	.27	303-315	.86	.14	620-735	.99	.01
77-83	.61	.39	180-188	.74	.26	316-328	.87	.13	> 735	1.0	.00
84-91	.62	.38	189-197	.75	.25	329-344	.88	.12			

Using the performance value (2120) instead of the rating (2150) and remembering that the rules limit the rating differences to  $\pm$ 400 points (see B.02-8.3.1), we find:

Opp.	Rating	Rating difference	dp
10	1750	2120 - 1750 = +370	0.90
7	1900	2120 - 1900 = +220	0.78
1	2200	2120 - 2200 = -80	0.39
16	1450	$2120 - 1450 = +670 \rightarrow +400$	0.92
3	2100	2120 - 2100 = +20	0.53

The expected score Pa is the sum of the winning probabilities, i.e.,

Pa = 0.90 + 0.78 + 0.39 + 0.92 + 0.53 = 3.52

This value approximates the real score, but indeed the approximation is not a brilliant one. Had we calculated the expected score by means of the averaged ratings (ARO), as it was prescribed in past rules, instead of round by round as is the rule today, we would have obtained a more precise result:

TPR-ARO = 2120-1880 = 240, hence Pd = 0.80, and Pa = 5x0.80 = 4.0 (but the results are not usually *that* precise).

In summary, *TPR is an approximation (and not a very precise one...) of the rating the player should have in order to justify their result* (we will see presently that PTP is a better estimate for this value).

*In the Swiss tournament, calculate the TPR of players #2, #6 and #12.* 

ARO is of course calculated as we did in the previous exercise. For convenience, let's reproduce the table from B.02-8.1.1

р	dp	р	dp	р	dp	р	dp	р	dp	р	dp
1.0	800	.83	273	.66	117	.49	-7	.32	-133	.15	-296
.99	677	.82	262	.65	110	.48	-14	.31	-141	.14	-309
.98	589	.81	251	.64	102	.47	-21	.30	-149	.13	-322
.97	538	.80	240	.63	95	.46	-29	.29	-158	.12	-336
.96	501	.79	230	.62	87	.45	-36	.28	-166	.11	-351
.95	470	.78	220	.61	80	.44	-43	.27	-175	.10	-366
.94	444	.77	211	.60	72	.43	-50	.26	-184	.09	-383
.93	422	.76	202	.59	65	.42	-57	.25	-193	.08	-401
.92	401	.75	193	.58	57	.41	-65	.24	-202	.07	-422
.91	383	.74	184	.57	50	.40	-72	.23	-211	.06	-444
.90	366	.73	175	.56	43	.39	-80	.22	-220	.05	-470
.89	351	.72	166	.55	36	.38	-87	.21	-230	.04	-501
.88	336	.71	158	.54	29	.37	-95	.20	-240	.03	-538
.87	322	.70	149	.53	21	.36	-102	.19	-251	.02	-589
.86	309	.69	141	.52	14	.35	-110	.18	-262	.01	-677
.85	296	.68	133	.51	7	.34	-117	.17	-273	.00	-800
.84	284	.67	125	.50	0	.33	-125	.16	-284		

Now let's consider Player #2 and calculate their ARO.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	ARO
n	Prupo	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3	1000
2	DIUNO	2150	4.0	1750	1900	2200	1450	2100	1000

Player #2 scored 4 points in five games, achieving an average score of p = 4/5 = 0.8. We look up this value in the table, finding that it corresponds to an expected rating difference dp = 240 points. Adding this difference to the player's ARO, we find

TPR = ARO + dp = 1880 + 240 = 2120.

Let's now proceed to player #6, whose unplayed game will be ignored (i.e., discarded):

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	ARO
C F	Franck	1050	2.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8	1017
O	Franck	1920	5.0	1550	2100		1750	1850	1012

Since there are only four played games, while the PAB must be ignored, we have p = 2/4 = 0.50, corresponding to a dp = 0, and hence TPR = 1813 + 0 = 1813.

Finally, let's consider player #12, who played only one game.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	ARO
10	Nick (M)	1650	2.0	-W4	+BYE	+F14			2050
12	INICK (VV)	1020	2.0	2050					2050

The average score is zero. In this case, the table indicates a hypothetical rating difference of -800 points (which is not derived from a probability calculation but rather a technical choice). Therefore, we have TPR = 2050 - 800 = 1250.

## In the Swiss tournament, calculate TPR for all players.

The preliminary calculation of ARO is made just as in previous exercises, and we'll use the corresponding results. Since unplayed games must be ignored, we include the scores adjusted excluding the unrated games and the actual number N of played games.

#	NAME	ELO	ARO	SCORE	ADJ SC	Ν	р	dp	TPR
2	Bruno	2150	1880	4.0	4.0	5	0.80	240	2120
3	Charline	2100	1940	3.5	3.5	5	0.70	149	2089
4	David	2050	1888	3.5	3.0	4	0.88	193	2081
1	Alyx	2200	1820	3.5	3.5	5	0.70	149	1969
16	Stephan	1450	1820	3.5	3.5	5	0.70	149	1969
6	Franck	1950	1813	3.0	2.0	4	0.75	0	1813
11	Maria	1700	1863	2.5	1.5	4	0.63	-87	1776
8	Irina	1850	1730	2.5	2.5	5	0.50	0	1730
5	Helene	2000	1690	2.5	2.5	5	0.50	0	1690
14	Paul	1550	1800	2.0	2.0	З	0.67	125	1925
15	Reine	1500	1860	2.0	2.0	5	0.40	-72	1788
12	Nick (W)	1650	2050	2.0	0.0	1	2.00	-800	1250
13	Opal	1600	1930	1.5	1.5	5	0.30	-149	1781
7	Genevieve	1900	1760	1.5	1.5	5	0.30	-149	1611
9	Jessica	1800	1975	1.5	0.0	2	0.75	-800	1175
10	Lais	1750	1880	1.0	1.0	5	0.20	-240	1640

# 5.3 Average performance rating of opponents (APRO)

APRO is the average of the opponents' performances (TPR) rounded to the nearest whole number ([10.4]). The underlying idea is that if TPR approximates the playing strength expressed in the tournament by a player, the average of the opponents' TPRs approximates the average strength of the opposition actually faced. Consequently, the same result achieved against stronger opposition is considered more valuable. In other words, this tie-break emphasizes the quality of results against stronger opponents.

On the other hand, to calculate APRO, you need to compute the TPR of all opponents, making it a somewhat laborious tie-break.

# Exercise 21

# In the Swiss tournament, determine the ranking of 3.5-points players using APRO system.

Of course, the (preliminary) calculation of ARO is made just as in the above exercises, and we'll use the corresponding results. Since unplayed games must be ignored, we include the scores adjusted excluding the unrated games and the actual number N of played games.

For our convenience, we'll use the TPR values found in the previous exercise, including them in the crosstable for each opponent. Then we calculate the averages, excluding all the unplayed games.

-									
#	NAME	TPR	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	APRO
3 Charline	Charling	2000	2 5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2	1004
	Charline	2089	5.5	1776	1813	1730	2081	2120	1904
4 David	2001	2081	2 5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1	1772
	Daviu		5.5	1250		1781	2089	1969	1//2
1	Abor	1969	3.5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4	1700
T	Аіух			1175	1781	2120	1788	2081	1/09
16	Stephan	1060	2 5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15	1005
		1909	3.5		1776	1611	2120	1788	1005

Sorting the crosstable based on APRO, the new ranking results (#3, #16, #1, #4), whereas ARO and TPR both yield (#3, #4, #1, 16) – the different choice of tie-breaks gives a different composition of the podium!

# 5.4 Perfect tournament performance (PTP)

The TPR provides an approximate indication of what the rating of a player should be to achieve the results they have actually attained. The idea behind PTP is to assess this value *as precisely as possible*, so that the expected score for that rating accurately corresponds to the achieved score; hence, the definition in [10.3]. This tie-break can be considered an improved version of the TPR and is a strength indicator that is certainly more reliable than those seen so far, even though it inevitably reflects the effects of any imprecise ratings. The drawback is that the process is quite laborious. It requires the repeated use of the table in B.02-8.1.2 and long and repeated sequences of calculations, making it suitable for computer calculation - but not at all for manual computation.

## Exercise 22

# In the Swiss tournament, determine the Perfect Performance of player #3.

For this calculation we need the results of the player and the opponents' ratings.

#	NAME	SCOR	ELO	ARO	TPR	1	2	3	4	5
3	Charline	2 5	2100	1040	2000	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2
		line 3.5 2100	1940	2089	1700	1950	1850	2050	2150	

In general, the PTP value should not be too far from the TPR, which in this case is 2089. For want of better information, let's take this as a starting point. To begin with, let's calculate the score we'd expect if the player had this value as a rating, and compare it to the actual score (3.5) - in this calculation, *the*  $\pm$ 400 *points cut does not apply*.

Opp.	Rating	Rating difference	e	dp	Ра	
1	1700	2089 - 1700 =	+389	0.91		
6	1950	2089 - 1950 =	+139	0.69		
8	1850	2089 - 1850 =	+239	0.80		
4	2050	2089 - 2050 =	+39	0.55		
2	2150	2089 - 2150 =	-61	0.42	3.37	

The expected score we obtained il lower than actual score approximately by 4%, so we should increase our PTP estimate. For the next attempt, let's then increase it by about 4%, resulting in the value 2170, and repeat the calculation.

Opp.	Rating	Rating difference	e	dp	Ра
1	1700	2170 - 1700 =	+470	0.95	
6	1950	2170 - 1950 =	+220	0.78	
8	1850	2170 - 1850 =	+320	0.87	
4	2050	2170 - 2050 =	+120	0.66	
2	2150	2170 - 2150 =	+20	0.53	3.79

Now our guess is too high, we then lower it to 2130 – which is the intermediate value between the previous two guesses, and once again repeat the calculation.

Opp.	Rating	Rating difference	e	dp	Ра
1	1700	2130 - 1700 =	+430	0.93	
6	1950	2130 - 1950 =	+180	0.74	
8	1850	2130 - 1850 =	+280	0.84	
4	2050	2130 - 2050 =	+80	0.61	
2	2150	2130 - 2150 =	-20	0.47	3.59

With each iteration, the resulting expected score gets closer to the actual score, making the estimation of TPT more accurate. The process should continue until the smallest value that yields the desired result is obtained. To reach the final result, four more steps are required (omitted here), and the outcome is 2112.

Opp.	Rating	Rating difference	e	dp	Ра
1	1700	2112 - 1700 =	+412	0.93	
6	1950	2112 - 1950 =	+162	0.71	
8	1850	2112 - 1850 =	+262	0.82	
4	2050	2112 - 2050 =	+62	0.59	
2	2150	2112 - 2150 =	-38	0.45	3.50

As we anticipated, to obtain results in a reasonable time, the calculation of this tie-break *must* be entrusted to a computer. We should however mention that the method outlined here has been chosen for its simplicity but is not the only possible approach - and certainly not the most efficient.

It's worth noting that the calculation of the PTP is theoretically impossible for a player who has achieved a score of zero, because no rating difference results in a win probability of zero. Therefore, a figurative value must be assigned to this tie-break, which the regulations set at 800 points less than the lowest-rated opponent.

From this tie-break stems the Average Perfect Performance of Opponents (APPO) [10.5], which, similar to APRO for TPR, is the average of PTPs of opponents faced on-the-board. Calculating this tie-break requires precomputing the PTPs for many players and then taking the average, but we won't do that here.

\*\*\*\*

To conclude the chapter, we present once again a summary table of rating-based tiebreaks. The final standings according to the various tie-break systems are highlighted with colour codes, and the table is sorted by score and ARO (e.g., brown corresponds to the second position, red to the third; if the ranking were ordered by TPT, the order of players #3 and #4 would be reversed; if ordered by APRO, players #4, #16, and #1 would be interchanged). Here, it can be observed that the order of players #12, #15, and #14 is not the same between ARO and TPR, despite having the same score (see note on page 35). This is because, for the calculation of TPR (as well as for all other rating-based tie-breaks), unplayed games are ignored, regardless of the reason and the attributed score. For TPR calculations, the scores of these players are not equivalent (players #12 and #9 have zero points!), and consequently, their respective dp values are not equivalent either.

RNK	#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	ARO	TPR	APRO	TPT	APPO
1	2	Bruno	2150	4,0	1880	2120	1856	2216	1852
2	3	Charline	2100	3,5	1940	2089	1904	2112	1934
3	4	David	2050	3,5	1888	2081	1772	2168	1962
4	1	Alyx	2200	3,5	1820	1969	1789	2029	1974
5	16	Stephan	1450	3,5	1820	1969	1805	2013	1799
6	6	Franck	1950	3,0	1813	1813	1846	1810	1836
7	11	Maria	1700	2,5	1863	1776	1840	1763	1836
8	8	Irina	1850	2,5	1730	1730	1915	1715	1924
9	5	Helene	2000	2,5	1690	1690	1719	1689	1676
10	12	Nick (W)	1650	2,0	2050	1250	2081		2168
11	15	Reine	1500	2,0	1860	1788	1776	1768	1767
12	14	Paul	1550	2,0	1800	1925	1775	1942	1756
13	9	Jessica	1800	1,5	1975	1175	1805		1802
14	13	Opal	1600	1,5	1930	1781	1879	1744	1909
15	7	Genevieve	1900	1,5	1760	1611	1869	1531	1890
16	10	Lais	1750	1,0	1880	1640	1717	1575	1871
Key: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16									

# **6 TIE-BREAKS BASED ON DIRECT ENCOUNTER (DE)**

Those tie-breaks compare the results the players attained in facing each other. First, we need to extract those games from the general crosstable – and only them – to create a separate ranking (sometimes called "head-to-head"). This ranking is then used to break ties. In Swiss tournaments, all unplayed or forfeited games are excluded- however, the tournament rules could include them in the calculation [6.1.1]. In round-robin or other tournaments with predetermined pairings, forfeits count as normal matches [15.2].

As with most tie-breaks, some players can still be tied, even after applying the separate ranking. The peculiarity of the direct encounter is that, in this case, the process is (repeatedly) applied to the players still tied, until they are all untied, or it is no longer possible to untie any. Another peculiarity is that this tie-break can be inserted multiple times in the list; for example, we could have the direct encounter, followed by the Buchholz, and then again direct encounter.

If all the tied players faced each other, their separate crosstable is just as if they had played a round-robin among themselves. In Swiss tournaments, this happens rather seldom, due to the fact that the crosstable often contains "gaps". Even in this case, a player may still be first, regardless of any possible outcome of the missing matches [6.3].

Let's consider a simple example (see the crosstable on the right). Alyx won against everyone, Bruno won against everyone but Alyx; Charline and David, on the other hand, did not play against each other – however, even if they had, they couldn't have reached Alyx's score. Alyx would still be the first in any case and is therefore ranked first. Once the first place is assigned, we

	Α	В	С	D
Alyx	*	1	1	1
Bruno	0	*	1	1
Charline	0	0	*	I
David	0	0	-	*

observe that, regardless of the outcomes of the missing matches, no one could surpass Bruno either, so he is ranked second. However, certainty ends here – for the remaining players, we have no such assurances. At this point, the process restarts with the remaining players composing a new separate ranking until no more players can be untied (which is the case here, as only Charline and David are left, both with zero points). Then, we should proceed to the next tie-breaking system or drawing of lots.

## 6.1 Direct encounter in Swiss tournaments

## Exercise 23

## In the Swiss tournament, rank all 3.5-points players using direct encounter (DE).

Let's extract the tied players' games from the general crosstable and compile the separate crosstable. David achieved the best results in the matches he played, but the crosstable includes several gaps. We need to investigate what could have happened, based on all the potential outcomes of the unplayed games. In theory, we should try all possible combinations of outcomes, but we don't really do all that. A useful practical method is to consider all the unplayed matches (in blue in the adjacent table) as wins. Even though this may yield some "impossible" scores, it makes readily apparent whether those matches could be decisive or not. Here, for example, it's clear that Stephan's score (and indeed anyone's) could have

	Α	С	D	S
Alyx	*	-	1⁄2	I
Charline	-	*	1⁄2	-
David	1⁄2	1⁄2	*	-
Stephan	-	-	-	*

	Α	С	D	S
Alyx	*	1	1⁄2	1
Charline	1	*	1⁄2	1
David	1⁄2	1⁄2	*	1
Stephan	1	1	1	*

surpassed David's, so we don't have a definite winner, and no ties can be broken.

## Exercise 24

#### In the Swiss tournament, rank all 3.5-points players using direct encounter (DE).

Once again, let's compile the separate crosstable. Now we have only one game, and once again no tie can be broken. incidentally, we observe that for the scoregroups at 2.0 and 1.5 points there are no played games at all, and therefore no tie can be broken there too.

	Е	Ι	Μ
Helene	*	I	1
Irina	1	*	1
Maria	0	-	*

Determine the standings of the Swiss tournament through the Direct Encounter tie-break.

#	NAME	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
3	Charline	6,5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	-W2	+B16	=W1	+W14	+B10
1	Alyx	6,0	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4	=B6	=B3	=W16	+B8
2	Bruno	6,0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	+B3	=W4	-W6	=B15	=W5
4	David	6,0	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1	=B2	=W16	=B6	+W15
6	Franck	6,0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8	=W1	+B2	=W4	+B16
7	Genevieve	4,5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11	-B10	+W13	+W9	+B14
8	Irina	4,5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6	=B11	=W15	+B5	-W1
16	Stephan	4,5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15	-W3	=B4	=B1	-W6
5	Helene	4,0	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10	-B14	+B9	-W8	=B2
10	Lais	4,0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5	+W7	+B12	+W11	-W3
14	Paul	4,0	+W6	-B8	-F12	-	+B13	+W5	+W11	-B3	-W7
15	Reine	4,0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16	+W12	=B8	=W2	-B4
11	Maria	3,5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7	=W8	-B14	-B10	=W13
9	Jessica	3,0	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE	+B13	-W5	-B7	=W12
12	Nick	3,0	-W4	+BYE	+F14			-B15	-W10	=B13	=B9
13	Opal	2,5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14	-W9	-B7	=W12	=B11

For our convenience, let's highlight in different colours the four groups of tied players.

Let's begin with the 6.0-points scoregroup, which yields the separate crosstable reported on the side. Here we observe that Franck scored two points, and is first, Bruno scored one point and is last, whereas Alyx and David, who scored 1.5 points each, are still tied. We should then apply once again the procedure to those two players, building a new separate crosstable including only them.

This attempt does not bring any new information, as these players had a draw. Hence, we can't break this tie, which must be resolved with the subsequent tie-breaks.

In the second scoregroup, at 4.5 points, not all players met each other. From the results we observe that, had Irina played and won with Genevieve, she would have reached the same score as Stephan. We cannot determine a clear first place – and should then abandon this attempt and proceed to the next tie-break.

In the third scoregroup, at 4.0 points, the situation is just the same. Finally, the last scoregroup, at 3.0 points, includes only two players who have drawn against each other.

All in all, once again, the tie-break based on direct encounters yields poor results. This is in fact rather expected; direct

encounter tie-breaks have limited effectiveness. That's why its use is relatively infrequent, and often, when used, it appears as the first tie-break, followed by other methods with better differentiating power.

(6 p.)	Α	В	D	F
Alyx	*	1⁄2	1⁄2	1⁄2
Bruno	1⁄2	*	1⁄2	0
David	1⁄2	1⁄2	*	1⁄2
Franck	1⁄2	1	1⁄2	*

		Α	D
Aly	х	*	1⁄2
Dav	vid	1⁄2	*
5 p.)	G	Ι	S

(4,5 р.)	G	Ι	S
Genevieve	*	-	0
Irina	-	*	1⁄2
Stephan	1	1⁄2	*

(4 p.)	Е	L	Ρ	R
Helene	*	1	1	0
Lais	0	*	-	0
Paul	0	-	*	-
Reine	1	1	-	*

# 6.2 Direct encounter in round-robin tournaments

# Exercise 26

# Determine the standings of the round-robin tournament through Direct Encounter.

The application of this method to round-robin tournaments is not substantially different from the case of Swiss-system tournaments - it is however a bit simpler, because unplayed games are not a factor. Also, the composition of the separate crosstable is easier – in fact, we only need to remove from the general crosstable all the rows and columns related to players not involved in the tie-break.

Here, we have two scoregroups to be subject to tie-break, for each of which we need to create the separate crosstable.

In the first scoregroup (see crosstable to the right), Alyx is first, with two points. Bruno and Charline are still tied – we should therefore apply the method once again, to only those two players, but this is useless because they drew. Since we cannot break this tie, we need to proceed to the next tie-break.

For the second scoregroup, we need to remember that the forfeit win is considered just as any regularly played game [15.2]. In this case we can compose a complete ranking, with Helene first with 1.5 points, followed by Franck with 1 point and David with ½ point.

	Α	В	С
Alyx	*	1	1
Bruno	0	*	1⁄2
Charline	0	1⁄2	*

	D	Е	F
David	*	1⁄2	0
Helene	1⁄2	*	+
Franck	1	-	*

## **7** OTHER TIE-BREAK SYSTEMS FOR INDIVIDUAL TOURNAMENTS

In this chapter, we will discuss individual tie-breaks of the "B" type ([7]), which only use the player's results. Those tie-breaks allow players to calculate or predict their tie-break value while still playing the round (which is impossible, for example, with the Buchholz, which depends on the results the previous opponents will obtain). These tie-breaks are all very easy to calculate and mostly ignore unplayed games. Some of them are very similar to each other, so we will discuss them together.

## 7.1 Number of wins (WIN) and Number of games won (WON)

The only difference between these two tie-breaks is that the first one (WIN) considers all games for which a score equal to that assigned for a win has been given, including PAB (Pairing Allocated Bye) and forfeit (and also any full-point byes, which are deprecated by the regulations but could still be awarded in certain specific cases). The second one (WON), on the other hand, only considers the games actually won on-the-board.

## Exercise 27

Determine the standings of the Swiss tournament through the WIN tie-break system.

For this tie-break we count the number of games which ended with *a score corresponding to a win* – independent of the nature of the win. The tie-break value is the total count.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	WIN
2	Drume	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3	2
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	1	1	0	1	0	3
16	Ctophon	1450	2 5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15	2
10	Stephan	1450	5.5	0	1	1	0	1	5
1	Abor	2200	2 5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4	2
T	Аіух	2200	5.5	1	0	0	1	0	Z
2	Charlino	2100	25	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2	2
5	Charme	2100	5.5	0	1	1	0	0	Z
1	David	2050	25	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1	2
т	Daviu	2030	5.5	1	0	1	0	0	2
6	Franck	1050	3.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8	2
0	TIALICK	1930	5.0	0	0	1	1	1	5
5	Holono	2000	25	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10	2
5	TIEIEITE	2000	2.5	0	0	1	0	1	۷
Q	Irina	1850	25	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6	2
0	11110	1050	2.5	0	1	0	1	0	۲
11	Maria	1700	25	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7	2
11	Malia		2.5	0	0	0	1	1	2
12	Nick (M/)	1650	2.0	-W4	+BYE	+F14			2
12		1050	2.0	0	1	1	0	0	۷
14	Paul	1550	2.0	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13	2
- '	1 dui	1550	2.0	1	0	0	0	1	۷
15	Reine	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16	2
15	Reine	1500	2.0	0	1	1	0	0	۷
7	Genevieve	1900	15	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11	1
<u> </u>	Genevieve	1900	1.5	1	0	0	0	0	-
9	lessica	1800	15	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE	1
	5000100	1000	1.5	0	0	0	0	1	-
13	Opal	1600	15	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14	1
		1000	1.5	1	0	0	0	0	
10	Lais	_ais 1750	0 1.0 -	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5	1
1.0	10 Lais			0	1	0	0	0	T

The practical application of the method is straightforward, we only need to pay attention to unplayed games. For example, among the results obtained by player #9, only the last of their three unplayed games counts, because this is a PAB and therefore is equivalent to a win. On the contrary, the other two unplayed games – a half point bye (HPB) and a forfeit loss – are not wins and therefore are not counted.

# Exercise 28

Determine the standings of the Swiss tournament through the WON tie-break system.

For this tie-break we count the number of games *actually won on-the-board*. The tie-break value is the total count.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	WON			
2	Desure	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3	2			
2	Bruno	2150	4.0	1	1	0	1	0	3			
16	Ctophon	1450	2 5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15	2			
10	Stephan	1450	3.5	0	1	1	0	1	5			
1	Abor	2200	2 5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4	2			
T	Аіух	2200	5.5	1	0	0	1	0	Z			
2	Charling	2100	2 5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2	2			
2	Channe	2100	5.5	0	1	1	0	0	Z			
1	David	2050	3 5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1	2			
т	Daviu	2030	5.5	1	0	1	0	0	2			
6	Franck	1050	3.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8	2			
0	TIALICK	1930	5.0	0	0	0	1	1	۷			
5	Holono	2000	25	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10	2			
5	TIEIEIIE	2000	2.5	0	0	1	0	1	۷			
Q	Irina	1950	1850	25	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6	2		
0	11110	1000	2.5	0	1	0	1	0	2			
11	Maria	1700	25	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7	1			
11	Maria		2.5	0	0	0	0	1	1			
14	Paul	1550	1550	2.0	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13	2		
T	1 dui	1550	2.0	1	0	0	0	1	2			
15	Poino	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16	2			
15	Keine	1300	2.0	0	1	1	0	0	2			
12	Nick (W)	1650	2.0	-W4	+BYE	+F14			0			
12		1050	2.0	0	0	0	0	0	0			
7	Genevieve	1900	15	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11	1			
/	Genevieve	1900	1.5	1	0	0	0	0	-			
13	Onal	1600	15	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14	1			
15		1000	1.5	1	0	0	0	0	-			
g	lessica	1800	15	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE	0			
	5055100	1000	1.5	0	0	0	0	0	U			
10	10 Lais	aic 1750	1.0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5	1			
10		Lais	Lais	Lais	Lais	is 1750	1.0	0	1	0	0	0

Again, the practical application of the method is straightforward. Contrary to WIN system, all unplayed games are ignored (e.g., see player #9).

# 7.2 Number of games played with Black (BPG) and won with Black (BWG)

The first of these tie-breaks (BPG) considers only the games actually played with Black, while *all unplayed games are ignored*. The second one (BWG) only counts the won games. The underlying principle is that playing with Black is more difficult than playing with White and does therefore deserve to be rewarded.

# Exercise 29

# Determine the standings of the Swiss tournament through the BPG tie-break system.

For this tie-break we count the number of games *actually played* on-the-board with Black. The tie-break value is the total count.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	BPG		
2	Brupo	2150	10	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3	2		
2	DIUNO	2150	4.0	1	0	1	0	1	C		
1	Aboy	2200	25	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4	2		
T	Аіух	2200	5.5	0	1	0	1	0	Z		
2	Charling	2100	35	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2	2		
5	Charme	2100	5.5	0	1	0	1	0	2		
Δ	David	2050	35	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1	2		
т	Daviu	2030	5.5	1	0	0	0	1	2		
16	Stenhan	1450	35	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15	2		
10	Stephan	1450	5.5	0	1	0	1	0	2		
6	Franck	1050	3.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8	2		
0	Папек	1550	5.0	1	0	0	0	1	2		
5	Helene	2000	25	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10	2		
5	Tielene	2000	2.5	0	1	0	1	0	2		
8	Irina 1850	1850	25	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6	2		
0	шпа	1050	2.5	1	0	1	0	0	2		
11	Maria	1700	25	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7	2		
11	1 Idi id	1700	0 2.5	1	0	1	0	0	2		
15	Reine	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16	З		
15	Keine	1500	2.0	1	0	1	0	1	5		
14	Daul	1550	2.0	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13	2		
11	1 001	1550	2.0	0	1	0	0	1	2		
12	Nick (W)	1650	2.0	-W4	+BYE	+F14			Ο		
12		1050	2.0	0	0	0	0	0	0		
7	Genevieve	1900	15	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11	З		
	Genevieve	1500	1.5	0	1	1	0	1	5		
13	Onal	1600	15	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14	З		
15	Ора	1000	1.5	1	0	1	1	0	5		
٩	lessica	1800	15	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE	1		
5	9 Jessica 1	1000	1.5	1	0	0	0	0			
10	10 Lais	is 1750	1.0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5	3		
10			1750	1750	1750	1750	1.0	0	1	0	1

Determine the standings of the Swiss tournament through the BWG tie-break system.

For this tie-break we count the number of games *actually won* on-the-board with Black. The tie-break value is the total count.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	BWG
2		2150	2150 4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3	1
2	Diulio	2130	ч.0	1	0	0	0	0	T
1	Abox	2200	2 5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4	1
T	I AIYX ZZ	x 2200 .	5.5	0	0	0	1	0	T
2 Charling	Charling	2100	2 5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2	1
2	Charine		5.5	0	1	0	0	0	T
1	David	2050	2 5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1	1
4	Daviu	2050	5.5	1	0	0	0	0	L
16	Chamban	Stophan 1450	ЭГ	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15	1
16 Stephan	1450	0 3.5	0	1	0	0	0	L	

<u> </u>		1050	2.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8	_				
6	Franck	1950	3.0	0	0	0	0	1	1				
Г	Llalana	2000	ЪΓ	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10	0				
5	Helene	2000	2.5	0	0	0	0	0	U				
0	Tripo	1050	2 5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6	0				
0	111110	1020	2.5	0	0	0	0	0	U				
11	Maria	1700	2 5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7	0				
ΤT	Maria	1700	2.5	0	0	0	0	0	U				
12	Nick (M)	1650	20	-W4	+BYE	+F14			0				
12	NICK (VV)		2.0	0	0	0	0	0	U				
14	Doul 1550	1550	20	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13	1				
14	Paul	1220	2.0	0	0	0	0	1	1				
15	Doino	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16	1				
12	Reifie	1200	2.0	0	0	1	0	0	T				
7	Conoviovo	1000	1000	1000	1000	1900	1 5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11	0
/	Genevieve	1900	1.5	0	0	0	0	0	U				
0	loccica	1000	1 5	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE	0				
9	Jessica	1000	1.5	0	0	0	0	0	U				
12	Opal	1600	1 5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14	1				
13 Opal	1000	1.5	1	0	0	0	0	L					
10	10 Lais	1750	1.0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5	- 1				
10			1.0	0	1	0	0	0					

# 7.3 Games one elected to play (GE)

The logic of this tie-break is to penalize players who have chosen to play fewer games than others; the counting is trivial, we just need to be careful about which games not to count (a requested by e or a forfeit loss doesn't count, but a forfeited win does).

# Exercise 31

# Determine the standings of the Swiss tournament through the GE tie-break system.

In this tie-break we count the number of rounds in which the player was available to play, including possible games that were not played for reasons beyond the player's control. The tie-break value is the total count.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	GE
2	Brupo	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3	Г
2	DIUNO	2150	4.0	1	1	1	1	1	5
	2200	25	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4	5	
T	т діух	2200	5.5	1	1	1	1	1	J
3 Charline	2100	2 5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2	Г	
		5.5	1	1	1	1	1	5	
10 Chamban	Stophon	1450	1450 3.5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15	Г
10	Stephan			1	1	1	1	1	5
1	David	2050	2 5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1	4
4	Daviu	2050	5.5	1	0	1	1	1	4
6	Franck	1050	2.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8	L
0	Franck 1950	3.0	1	1	1	1	1	5	
F	Holono	2000	25	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10	Е
5 Helene	2000	2.5	1	1	1	1	1	5	

0	Irina	1050	2.5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6	F	
0	11111a	1050	2.5	1	1	1	1	1	5	
11	Maria	1700	2 5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7	F	
TT	Maha	1700	2.5	1	1	1	1	1	5	
15	Doino	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16	- 5	
12	Reine	1200	2.0	1	1	1	1	1		
10	12 Nick (W)	1650	2.0	-W4	+BYE	+F14			3	
12		1020		1	1	1	0	0		
14	14 Paul	100	2.0	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13	2	
14		1220		1	1	0	0	1	3	
7	Consulato	1000	1.5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11	Г	
/	Genevieve	1900		1	1	1	1	1	5	
12	Onal	1600	1 5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14	Г	
13	Opai	1000	1.5	1	1	1	1	1	5	
0	lossico	1000	1 5	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE	2	
9	JESSICA	1000	1.5	1	1	0	0	1	3	
10	Laic	1750	1.0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5	-	
	1750	1.0	1	1	1	1	1	5		

We want to note the different handling between "voluntary absences" (VUR) and the games in which the player is available (unplayed games are highlighted in red and blue).

# 7.4 Sum of progressive scores (PS)

This tie-break is the sum of the player's scores at the end of each round, regardless of whether they played or not. The score from each round is added as many times as there are rounds remaining in the tournament, so the more advanced the round is, the less the result of a round weighs on the total.

Modifiers like Cut-1 or Cut-2 can be applied to this tie-break. Since the least significant addend is always the one from the first round (this is the minimum possible score), applying Cut-1 involves subtracting the result of the first round (which, however, continues to contribute as part of the scores in the subsequent rounds).

## Exercise 32

Determine the standings of the Swiss tournament through the PS tie-break system.

We calculate the player's score after each round, then sum all the scores.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	PS
C	Brupo	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3	12.0
Z	DI UNO	2150	4.0	1.0	2.0	2.5	3.5	4.0	13.0
л	4 David	2050	2 5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1	11 5
4 Daviu	2050	5.5	1.0	1.5	2.5	3.0	3.5	11.5	
1	1 Abox	2200	2 5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4	11.0
	2200	5.5	1.0	1.5	2.0	3.0	3.5	11.0	
2	Charling	2100	2 5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2	11 0
2	Charline	2100	5.5	0.5	1.5	2.5	3.0	3.5	11.0
16	Stophon	1450	2 5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15	10 E
	1450	3.5	0.5	1.5	2.5	2.5	3.5	10.2	
6	Franck	1050	2.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8	<u> </u>
6 Franck	1920	5.0	0.0	0.0	1.0	2.0	3.0	6.0	

0	Tripo	1050	2 5	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6	0 5	
0	IIIIa	1020	2.5	0.5	1.5	1.5	2.5	2.5	0.5	
11	Maria	1700	2 5	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7	ГГ	
1 T T	Maria	1700	2.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	1.5	2.5	5.5	
F	Holono	2000	2 5	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10	ΕO	
С	пејеће	2000	2.5	0.0	0.0	1.0	1.5	2.5	5.0	
12	Nick (M)	1650	2.0	-W4	+BYE	+F14			7.0	
12	INICK (VV)	1020	2.0	0.0	1.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	7.0	
15 Reine	1500	2.0	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16	7.0		
	Reine	1200	2.0	0.0	1.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	7.0	
14	Devil 15	1550	2.0	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13	6.0	
14	Paul	1550	2.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	2.0	0.0	
12	Onal	1600	1 5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14	7.0	
12	Opai	1000	1.5	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	7.0	
7	Conquiava	1000	1 5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11	6.0	
/	Genevieve	1900	1.5	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.5	1.5	0.0	
0	loccico	1000	1 5	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE	25	
9	JESSICA	1000	1.5	0.0	0.0	0.5	0.5	1.5	2.5	
10		1750	1.0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5	1.0	
10 Lais	1750	1.0	0.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	4.0		

## Determine the standings of the Swiss tournament through the PS-C1 tie-break system.

In this tie-break we need to calculate the score at the end of each round, then add all those scores but the smallest – which is of course the one after the first round.

#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	1	2	3	4	5	PS-C1	
2	Prupo	2150	4.0	+B10	+W7	=B1	+W16	=B3	12.0	
2	bruno	2150	4.0	1.0	2.0	2.5	3.5	4.0	12.0	
2	Charling	2100	2 5	=W11	+B6	+W8	=B4	=W2	10 F	
3	Chanine	2100	3.5	0.5	1.5	2.5	3.0	3.5	10.5	
1	David	2050	2 5	+B12	=BYE	+W13	=W3	=B1	10 5	
4	Daviu	2050	5.5	1.0	1.5	2.5	3.0	3.5	10.5	
1	Aboy	2200	2 5	+W9	=B13	=W2	+B15	=W4	10.0	
T	Аіух	2200	5.5	1.0	1.5	2.0	3.0	3.5	10.0	
16	Stophon	1/150	2 5	=W8	+B11	+W7	-B2	+W15	10.0	
10	Stephan	1450	5.5	0.5	1.5	2.5	2.5	3.5	10.0	
6	6 Franck	1950	2.0	-B14	-W3	+BYE	+W10	+B8	6.0	
0		1950	5.0	0.0	0.0	1.0	2.0	3.0	0.0	
Q	) Tring 105	1950	25	=B16	+W14	-B3	+W13	-W6	80	
0	111110	1030	2.5	0.5	1.5	1.5	2.5	2.5	0.0	
5	Holono	2000	25	-W13	-B15	+W11	=B7	+W10	ΓO	
5	TIEIEITE	2000	2.5	0.0	0.0	1.0	1.5	2.5	5.0	
11	Maria	1700	25	=B3	-W16	-B5	+F9	+W7	50	
11	Maria	1700	2.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	1.5	2.5	5.0	
12	Nick (W)	1650	20	-W4	+BYE	+F14			70	
12		1030	2.0	0.0	1.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	7.0	
15	Poino	1500	20	-B7	+W5	+B10	-W1	-B16	70	
13	Reine	1300	2.0	0.0	1.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	7.0	
14	Paul	1550	2.0	+W6	-B8	-F12		+B13	F 0	
14 Paul	1550	1550	1550	2.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	2.0	5.0

12	13 Onal	1600	1 5	+B5	=W1	-B4	-B8	-W14	6.0	
	1000	1.5	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	0.0		
7	7 Genevieve	1000	1 5	+W15	-B2	-B16	=W5	-B11	50	
7 Genevieve	1900	1.5	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.5	1.5	5.0		
0	9 Jessica	1800	1.5	-B1	-W10	=BYE	-F11	+BYE	2.5	
9				0.0	0.0	0.5	0.5	1.5		
10	Laia	1750	1.0	-W2	+B9	-W15	-B6	-B5	4.0	
	Lais			0.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0		

#### \*\*\*\*\*

Let's conclude this chapter comparing the results of the different systems. The following table shows the values resulting from each tie-break. The background colour of the cell represents the player's placement in the final ranking obtained with that system (for example, a black background in a cell indicates that, with that tie-break, the player would finish in the first position, and so on). Note that, among these tie-breaks, only those based on progressive scores (PS, PS-Cut 1) have a certain discriminatory power, while all other tie-breaks result in several residual ties.

RNK	#	NAME	ELO	SCORE	WIN	WON	BPG	BWG	GE	PS	PS-C1
1	2	Bruno	2150	4,0	3	3	3	1	5	13,0	12,0
2	4	David	2050	3,5	2	2	2	1	4	11,5	10,5
3	1	Alyx	2200	3,5	2	2	2	1	5	11,0	10,0
4	3	Charline	2100	3,5	2	2	2	1	5	11,0	10,5
5	16	Stephan	1450	3,5	3	3	2	1	5	10,5	10,0
6	6	Franck	1950	3,0	3	2	2	1	5	6,0	6,0
7	8	Irina	1850	2,5	2	2	2	0	5	8,5	8,0
8	11	Maria	1700	2,5	2	1	2	0	5	5,5	5,0
9	5	Helene	2000	2,5	2	2	2	0	5	5,0	5,0
10	12	Nick (W)	1650	2,0	2	0	0	0	3	7,0	7,0
11	15	Reine	1500	2,0	2	2	3	1	5	7,0	7,0
12	14	Paul	1550	2,0	2	2	2	1	З	6,0	5,0
13	13	Opal	1600	1,5	1	1	3	1	5	7,0	6,0
14	7	Genevieve	1900	1,5	1	1	3	0	5	6,0	5,0
15	9	Jessica	1800	1,5	1	0	1	0	3	2,5	2,5
16	10	Lais	1750	1,0	1	1	3	1	5	4,0	4,0
		Kev: 1	2 2	4 5 6	7 8	9 10	11 12	13 14	15 16		

# **PART TWO – TEAM TOURNAMENTS**

To compile the individual rankings of players in team tournaments, all the tie-break systems mentioned can be used. Additionally, other methods are needed to determine the order of placement for each team, introducing some more complexity compared to individual tournaments. The most obvious difference is the existence of two parallel scoring systems, team points (MP) and game points (GP), and many tie-breaks can be calculated by choosing either one of the two – and, in certain cases, even combining them (such as in Sonneborn-Berger). The score used for pairing, known as the *primary score*, is often (but not necessarily) also used as the first criterion for ranking. The other score, known as the *secondary score*, can be used in tie-breaks.

*The tournament rules* must specify which of the two is the primary score and which is secondary, and whether and how the latter should be used in pairings.

The calculation of tie-breaks requires extensive information. The following data are required (see paragraph 2.3, page 6 and following):

- Team composition
- Team (match) pairings
- Individual games pairings (this can be quite extensive)
- Sometimes, the board on which each game was played (board order)

While the first three are usually provided directly by the pairing software, the fourth usually is not immediately available and needs to be inferred from the pairings. In some tournaments, player placement follows the rating order, simplifying the process. In tournaments where board order is free, obtaining this information can be rather tedious.

Forfeits are rarer in team tournaments than in individual ones (but nonetheless they exist). There is no substantial difference in managing unplayed games or matches compared to individual tournaments.

In calculating tie-breaks for team tournaments, even more than in individual, it is recommended to use a spreadsheet if possible. This calculation may be required when the tournament management program does not handle the required tie-break, or a verification is necessary.

The scoring system used for team points in all examples is the traditional 2-1-0.

# 8 MATCH POINTS VERSUS GAME POINTS (MPvGP)

This tie-break uses the secondary score to break ties left by the primary score. According to the tournament rules, team points (MP) can be used to break ties in the individual points (GP) standings, or (more often) vice versa.

# Exercise 34

Compile tournament standings using a) match points or b) game points as the primary score.

The tournament management software usually provides those scores (more or less) automatically. Therefore, the application of this tie-break system is straightforward and only requires reordering the standings. The first table displays teams ordered by {MP, GP}, while the second shows the ordering {GP, MP}.

#	TEAM	MP	GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7
5	Elephants	10	18	12w4	6b3	2w4	4b½	1b2½	3w1⁄2	13b3½
1	Antelopes	10	17,5	8w21⁄2	4b1½	7w3	2b21⁄2	5w1½	+F	3b21⁄2
2	Bonobos	10	17	9b3	3w4	5b0	1w1½	13w3	4b21⁄2	10b3
4	Deer	10	17	11b3	1w2½	13b3	5w3½	3b1	2w11⁄2	9b21⁄2
3	Cougars	10	16	10w2½	2b0	9w3	6b21⁄2	4w3	5b31⁄2	1w1½
8	Hippopotami	7	15	1b1½	7w2	6w1	12b3½	10b2	9w2	11w3
6	Falcons	7	12,5	13b2	5w1	8b3	3w1½	11b2½	-F	12w2½
9	Iguanas	6	14,5	2w1	12b4	3b1	14w3	7w2	8b2	4w1½
7	Giraffes	6	11,5	14w2	8b2	1b1	10w21⁄2	9b2	13w2	ZPB
13	Moose	6	11,5	6w2	14b2½	4w1	11w2½	2b1	7b2	5w1⁄2
10	Jackals	5	13	3b1½	11w1½	12b2½	7b1½	8w2	14b3	2w1
11	Koalas	4	11,5	4w1	10b2½	14w2	13b1½	6w1½	12w2	8b1
14	Narwhals	4	11,5	7b2	13w1½	11b2	9b1	HPB	10w1	PAB
12	Lynxes	2	7,5	5b0	9w0	10w1½	8w1⁄2	PAB	11b2	6b1½
				•	•	•	•	•	•	•

#	TEAM	GP	MP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7
5	Elephants	18	10	12w4	6b3	2w4	4b½	1b2½	3w½	13b3½
1	Antelopes	17,5	10	8w21⁄2	4b1½	7w3	2b21⁄2	5w1½	+F	3b21⁄2
2	Bonobos	17	10	9b3	3w4	5b0	1w1½	13w3	4b21⁄2	10b3
4	Deer	17	10	11b3	1w2½	13b3	5w3½	3b1	2w11⁄2	9b21⁄2
3	Cougars	16	10	10w2½	2b0	9w3	6b21⁄2	4w3	5b31⁄2	1w1½
8	Hippopotami	15	7	1b1½	7w2	6w1	12b3½	10b2	9w2	11w3
9	Iguanas	14,5	6	2w1	12b4	3b1	14w3	7w2	8b2	4w1½
10	Jackals	13	5	3b1½	11w1½	12b2½	7b1½	8w2	14b3	2w1
6	Falcons	12,5	7	13b2	5w1	8b3	3w1½	11b2½	-F	12w2½
7	Giraffes	11,5	6	14w2	8b2	1b1	10w21⁄2	9b2	13w2	ZPB
13	Moose	11,5	6	6w2	14b2½	4w1	11w2½	2b1	7b2	5w1⁄2
11	Koalas	11,5	4	4w1	10b2½	14w2	13b1½	6w1½	12w2	8b1
14	Narwhals	11,5	4	7b2	13w1½	11b2	9b1	HPB	10w1	PAB
12	Lynxes	7,5	2	5b0	9w0	10w1½	8w1⁄2	PAB	11b2	6b1½

The resulting standings are in general rather different and could reward (or punish) different teams. This is why the choice of the primary score system must *always* be made explicit before the tournament starts.

# **9 SISTEMA BUCHHOLZ (BH)**

Once it's determined which score to use (MP or GP), there is no substantial difference between calculating the Buchholz for a team and that for an individual player in an individual tournament.
### Exercise 35

Using match points (MP) as primary score, compile the final standings of the tournament using Buchholz system (total).

For each participant and round, let's enter the scores of all opposing teams (MP or GP depending on the case – here both are shown, just as an example) into the team pairings crosstable (see table below).

#	Team	MP	GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7
	Antelopes			8w21⁄2	4b1½	7w3	2b21⁄2	5w1½	+F	3b21⁄2
1	Opponent MP	10	171/2	7	10	6	10	10	10	10
	Opponent GP			15,0	17,0	11,5	17,0	18,0	17,5	16,0
	Bonobos			9b3	3w4	5b0	1w1½	13w3	4b21⁄2	10b3
2	Opponent MP	10	17	6	10	10	10	6	10	5
	Opponent GP			14,5	16,0	18,0	17,5	11,5	17,0	13,0

Team #1 won a match by forfeit – the outcome of this match is therefore calculated as a win against a dummy opponent with the same score and result, just like in the individual case [16.4] (except, of course, that the dummy opponent is now a team, not a player). Therefore, in the corresponding cell, we enter the score (MP or GP) of the team itself.

As usual, we need to be careful with matches "unplayed on request" that are not followed by any round with availability to play [16.2.5]. In calculating the tie-break of the opposing teams, these matches should be considered as draws [16.3.2]. In our tournament, this happens in the last round for team #7, whose score needs to be adjusted for all the opponents it faced (but not for the team itself).

#	Team	MP	GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	тот
	Giraffes			14w2	8b2	1b1	10w21⁄2	9b2	13w2	ZPB	
7	Adjusted MP	6	111/2	1	1	0	2	1	1	1	7
	Adjusted GP			2	2	1	2,5	2	2	2	13,5

We can then compile a table in which, for each team, we list the score (here, MP) of the opposing team encountered in that round, adjusted as described above. This is the only score to adjust in our crosstable – all other unplayed matches are calculated at face value.

We thus obtain the following table, where the last column shows the sum of contributes per round, which is the final value of the Buchholz (matches for which the adjusted score of the opposing team is used are highlighted, and the table is already sorted by decreasing score and Buchholz). Note that, for the last round of team #7, which is a requested bye, we use the actual rather than the adjusted score [16.4].

#	ТЕАМ	МР	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	BH
1	Antelopes	10	17,5	10	17,5	7	10	7	10	10	10	10	64
3	Cougars	10	16,0	10	16,0	5	10	6	7	10	10	10	58
2	Bonobos	10	17,0	10	17,0	6	10	10	10	6	10	5	57
4	Deer	10	17,0	10	17,0	4	10	6	10	10	10	6	56
5	Elephants	10	18,0	10	18,0	2	7	10	10	10	10	6	55
6	Falcons	7	12,5	7	12,5	6	10	7	10	4	7	2	46
8	Hippopotami	7	15,0	7	15,0	10	7	7	2	5	6	4	41

13	Moose	6	11,5	6	11,5	7	4	10	4	10	7	10	52
9	Iguanas	6	14,5	6	14,5	10	2	10	4	7	7	10	50
7	Giraffes	6	11,5	7	13,5	4	7	10	5	6	6	6	44
10	Jackals	5	13,0	5	13,0	10	4	2	7	7	4	10	44
11	Koalas	4	11,5	4	11,5	10	5	4	6	7	2	7	41
14	Narwhals	4	11,5	4	11,5	7	6	4	6	4	5	4	36
12	Lynxes	2	7,5	2	7,5	10	6	5	7	2	4	7	41

(Note: the fact that all ties here are resolved is but a *lucky coincidence*.)

### Exercise 36

# Using match points (MP) as primary score, compile the final standings of the tournament using Buchholz system Cut-1 (BH-C1).

The calculation is very similar to the previous one, we just need to discard the contribute owed to the *least significant value* in each sum. We want to take care of possible forfeit losses (#6, sixth round) or requested byes (#14, fifth round, and #7, seventh round), because the contributes from these matches are the first to be cut. The cut contributes are highlighted in colour (light red for less significant values, yellow for those due to voluntary absences as mentioned above).

#	TEAM	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	BH-C1
1	Antelopes	10	17,5	10	17,5	7	10	7	10	10	10	10	57
3	Cougars	10	16,0	10	16,0	5	10	6	7	10	10	10	53
5	Elephants	10	18,0	10	18,0	2	7	10	10	10	10	6	53
2	Bonobos	10	17,0	10	17,0	6	10	10	10	6	10	5	52
4	Deer	10	17,0	10	17,0	4	10	6	10	10	10	6	52
6	Falcons	7	12,5	7	12,5	6	10	7	10	4	7	2	39
8	Hippopotami	7	15,0	7	15,0	10	7	7	2	5	6	4	39
9	Iguanas	6	14,5	6	14,5	10	2	10	4	7	7	10	48
13	Moose	6	11,5	6	11,5	7	4	10	4	10	7	10	48
7	Giraffes	6	11,5	7	13,5	4	7	10	5	6	6	6	38
10	Jackals	5	13,0	5	13,0	10	4	2	7	7	4	10	42
11	Koalas	4	11,5	4	11,5	10	5	4	6	7	2	7	39
14	Narwhals	4	11,5	4	11,5	7	6	4	6	4	5	4	32
12	Lynxes	2	7,5	2	7,5	10	6	5	7	2	4	7	39

We should observe that the cut value due to voluntary absences is often greater than the least significant value, and that is correct. *Rule [16.5] is designed to prevent a competitor from gaining an advantage by choosing a voluntary absence rather than playing the match.* 

### Exercise 37

Using game points (GP) as primary score, compile the final standings of the tournament using Buchholz system Cut-1.

The only practical difference from the previous examples is the use of a different score. So, this time we start from the table reordered for decreasing GP and enter the GP scores (adjusted) of the opposing teams for each round.

#	Team	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	BH GP	BH- C1
1	Antelopes	10	17,5	10	17,5	15,0	17,0	13,5	17,0	18,0	17,5	16,0	114,0	100,5
3	Cougars	10	16,0	10	16,0	13,0	17,0	14,5	12,5	17,0	18,0	17,5	109,5	97,0
2	Bonobos	10	17,0	10	17,0	14,5	16,0	18,0	17,5	11,5	17,0	13,0	107,5	96,0
4	Deer	10	17,0	10	17,0	11,5	17,5	11,5	18,0	16,0	17,0	14,5	106,0	94,5
5	Elephants	10	18,0	10	18,0	7,5	12,5	17,0	17,0	17,5	16,0	11,5	99,0	91,5
8	Hippopotami	7	15,0	7	15,0	17,5	13,5	12,5	7,5	13,0	14,5	11,5	90,0	82,5
6	Falcons	7	12,5	7	12,5	11,5	18,0	15,0	16,0	11,5	12,5	7,5	92,0	79,5
9	Iguanas	6	14,5	6	14,5	17,0	7,5	16,0	11,5	13,5	15,0	17,0	97,5	90,0
13	Moose	6	11,5	6	11,5	12,5	11,5	17,0	11,5	17,0	13,5	18,0	101,0	89,5
7	Giraffes	6	11,5	7	13,5	11,5	15,0	17,5	13,0	14,5	11,5	11,5	94,5	83,0
10	Jackals	5	13,0	5	13,0	16,0	11,5	7,5	13,5	15,0	11,5	17,0	92,0	84,5
11	Koalas	4	11,5	4	11,5	17,0	13,0	11,5	11,5	12,5	7,5	15,0	88,0	80,5
14	Narwhals	4	11,5	4	11,5	13,5	11,5	11,5	14,5	11,5	13,0	11,5	87,0	75,5
12	Lynxes	2	7,5	2	7,5	18,0	14,5	13,0	15,0	7,5	11,5	12,5	92,0	84,5

# **10** EXTENDED SONNEBORN-BERGER SYSTEM FOR TEAMS (ESB)

The extended Sonneborn-Berger system for teams (ESB) is calculated by summing, for each team, the product of the total score of each opponent (at the end of the tournament) by the score obtained by the team itself against that opponent. Since there are two different scoring systems (MP or GP), there are four possible combinations, depending on the choice of the score to use for the competing team and the opponents. The table below summarizes the possibilities.

		Oppone	nt score
		MP	GP
vn Dre	МΡ	EMMSB Opponent MP × MP obtained	EGMSB Opponent GP × MP obtained
SC O	GP	EMGSB Opponent MP × GP obtained	$\frac{EGGSB}{Opponent} GP \times GP obtained$

We can use any of these, or any combination. The ESB can be subject to "Cut" modifiers (notably, Cut-1). On the contrary, "Median" type modifiers do not apply because this tiebreak, by its nature, aims to give more importance to results scored against stronger opponents, so it wouldn't make sense to ignore just them.

The ESB tie-break can be used with either round-robin or Swiss-system tournaments. In the latter case, unplayed games and matches, just as in the case of SB for individual tournaments, are given different values based on the type of absence [16].

We will see presently several examples of application in the Swiss tournament; everything shown can be directly extended to round-robin, except for the handling of unplayed matches or games, which in the latter case are treated just as if they had been played.

### Exercise 38

Primary score is MP. Calculate EMMSB-Cut 1 for all teams at 10 points.

#	TEAM	MP	GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7
1	Antelopes	10	171⁄2	8w21⁄2	4b1½	7w3	2b21/2	5w1½	+F	3b21/2
2	Bonobos	10	17	9b3	3w4	5b0	1w1½	13w3	4b21/2	10b3
3	Cougars	10	16	10w21⁄2	2b0	9w3	6b21⁄2	4w3	5b31⁄2	1w1½
4	Deer	10	17	11b3	1w2½	13b3	5w3½	3b1	2w1½	9b21/2
5	Elephants	10	18	12w4	6b3	2w4	4b1⁄2	1b2½	3w1⁄2	13b3½
6	Falcons	7	121/2	13b2	5w1	8b3	3w11⁄2	11b2½	-F	12w21/2
7	Giraffes	6	111/2	14w2	8b2	1b1	10w21/2	9b2	13w2	ZPB
8	Hippopotami	7	15	1b1½	7w2	6w1	12b3½	10b2	9w2	11w3
9	Iguanas	6	141/2	2w1	12b4	3b1	14w3	7w2	8b2	4w11⁄2
10	Jackals	5	13	3b1½	11w1½	12b2½	7b1½	8w2	14b3	2w1
11	Koalas	4	111/2	4w1	10b21/2	14w2	13b1½	6w1½	12w2	8b1
12	Lynxes	2	71/2	5b0	9w0	10w1½	8w1/2	PAB	11b2	6b1½
13	Moose	6	111/2	6w2	14b21/2	4w1	11w2½	2b1	7b2	5w1/2
14	Narwhals	4	111/2	7b2	13w1½	11b2	9b1	HPB	10w1	PAB

Let's extract from the general crosstable the data relevant to the five tied teams.

For the calculation, we need the MP scores of the teams involved and their opponents, and it is recommended to first gather all the necessary data. In the table below, the first row shows the "team's card", inferred from the crosstable. The second row lists the MP scores obtained by the team against each opponent, already adjusted for any unplayed matches (as seen in previous exercises, this adjustment concerns only the matches with team #7, because all other voluntary absences are followed by rounds with availability to play, see [16.3]). The third row, on the other hand, shows the MP (total) scores of opponents faced (real or dummy). Finally, the fourth row shows the products between the score obtained against the opposing team and the score of the latter - these are the contributions that, when summed together, and excluding the one corresponding to the least significant value, finally give the value of the tie-break. Here, the contribution to be discarded, which is not the smallest but that related to the least significant opponent (i.e., the one with the lower score), is highlighted (light red background). Finally, the last column shows the values of the total tie-break (above) and the Cut-1 tie-break, obtained by discarding the least significant value (opponent). All of this is, of course, repeated for each team to untie.

#	ТЕАМ	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	EMMSB Cut-1
	Antelopes					8w21⁄2	4b1½	7w3	2b21⁄2	5w11⁄2	+F	3b21⁄2	
4	Team MP	10	171/-	10	171/-	2	0	2	2	0	2	2	88
L L	Opponent MP	10	1/ /2	10	1/ /2	7	10	7	10	10	10	10	74
	ESB Contribute					14	0	14	20	0	20	20	

Firstly, let's note the adjusted score attributed to the opponent #7 (R3), which asked for a ZPB in the last round. Also, observe that team #1 has an unplayed match in the sixth round, to be counted at face value [16.4].

Team #1 had two opponents (#7 and #8) with the same minimum score. We should exclude the one against which the team obtained the worst result, but in this case, those are equal too. Therefore, we can choose either one of the two. The total value of the EMMSB tie-break is determined by:

 $\mathsf{EMMSB} = 2x7 + 0x10 + 2x7 + 2x10 + 0x10 + 2x10 + 2X10 = 14 + 0 + 14 + 20 + 0 + 20 + 20 = 88$ 

Discarding the contribute corresponding to the least significant value (i.e., that of team #7 or #8), we have:

 $\mathsf{EMMSB-C1} = 0x10 + 2x7 + 2x10 + 0x10 + 2x10 + 2X10 = 14 + 0 + 14 + 20 + 0 + 20 + 20 = 74$ 

Once again, let's focus our attention on this point – as clearly seen in this case, the contribute related to the least significant value in general <u>is not</u> the smaller one.

Results for other teams are calculated in the very same way. The calculations are left as an exercise for the reader.

#	TEAM	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	EMMSB Cut-1
	Bonobos					9b3	3w4	5b0	1w1½	13w3	4b21⁄2	10b3	
2	Team MP	10	17	10	17	2	2	0	0	2	2	2	74
2	Opponent MP	10	1/	10	1/	6	10	10	10	6	10	5	64
	ESB Contribute					12	20	0	0	12	20	10	

#	ТЕАМ	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	EMMSB Cut-1
	Cougars					10w21⁄2	2b0	9w3	6b21⁄2	4w3	5b31⁄2	1w1½	
2	Team MP	10	16	10	16	2	0	2	2	2	2	0	76
Э	Opponent MP	10	10	10	10	5	10	6	7	10	10	10	66
	ESB Contribute					10	0	12	14	20	20	0	

#	ТЕАМ	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	EMMSB Cut-1
	Deer					11b3	1w2½	13b3	5w31⁄2	3b1	2w1½	9b21⁄2	
	Team MP	10	17	10	17	2	2	2	2	0	0	2	72
4	Opponent MP	10	1/	10	17	4	10	6	10	10	10	6	64
	ESB Contribute					8	20	12	20	0	0	12	

#	ТЕАМ	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	EMMSB Cut-1
	Elephants					12w4	6b3	2w4	4b½	1b2½	3w1⁄2	13b3½	
F	Team MP	10	10	10	10	2	2	2	0	2	0	2	70
Э	Opponent MP	10	10	10	10	2	7	10	10	10	10	6	66
_	ESB Contribute					4	14	20	0	20	0	12	

In the end, teams #3 and #5, still tied, share the second and third place, while teams #2 and #4 share the fourth and fifth place (incidentally, the SB total tie-break would not have left unresolved ties, but this is just a lucky coincidence).

### Exercise 39

### Primary score is MP. Calculate EGMSB for all teams at 10 points.

Let's extract from the general crosstable the data relevant to the tied teams (see previous examples). For this calculation, we need MP scores of the involved teams and the GP scores of their opponents. Numbers are now different (GP score is typically greater than MP) but the calculation method is identical to that seen in the previous exercise.

#	ТЕАМ	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	EGMSB
	Antelopes					8w21⁄2	4b1½	7w3	2b21⁄2	5w11⁄2	+F	3b21⁄2	
4	Team MP	10	171/-	10	171/-	2	0	2	2	0	2	2	150 0
1	Opponent GP	10	1/ /2	10	1/ /2	15,0	17,0	13,5	17,0	18,0	17,5	16,0	120,0
_	ESB Contribute					30,0	0,0	27,0	34,0	0,0	35,0	32,0	

#	ТЕАМ	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	EGMSB
	Bonobos					9b3	3w4	5b0	1w1½	13w3	4b21⁄2	10b3	
2	Team MP	10	17	10	17	2	2	0	0	2	2	2	144.0
2	Opponent GP	10	1/	10	17	14,5	16,0	18,0	17,5	11,5	17,0	13,0	144,0
	ESB Contribute					29.0	32.0	0.0	0.0	23.0	34.0	26.0	

#	TEAM	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	EGMSB
	Cougars					10w21⁄2	2b0	9w3	6b21⁄2	4w3	5b31⁄2	1w1½	
2	Team MP	10	16	10	16	2	0	2	2	2	2	0	150.0
3	Opponent GP	10	10	10	10	13,0	17,0	14,5	12,5	17,0	18,0	17,5	120,0
	ESB Contribute					26,0	0,0	29,0	25,0	34,0	36,0	0,0	

#	TEAM	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	EGMSB
	Deer					11b3	1w2½	13b3	5w31⁄2	3b1	2w11⁄2	9b21⁄2	
	Team MP	10	17	10	17	2	2	2	2	0	0	2	146.0
4	Opponent GP	10	1/	10	17	11,5	17,5	11,5	18,0	16,0	17,0	14,5	140,0
	ESB Contribute					23,0	35,0	23,0	36,0	0,0	0,0	29,0	

#	ТЕАМ	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	EGMSB
	Elephants					12w4	6b3	2w4	4b½	1b2½	3w1⁄2	13b3½	
F	Team MP	10	10	10	10	2	2	2	0	2	0	2	122.0
Э	Opponent GP	10	10	10	10	7,5	12,5	17,0	17,0	17,5	16,0	11,5	132,0
	ESB Contribute					15,0	25,0	34,0	0,0	35,0	0,0	23,0	

Now there are no more tied teams – this makes sense because the values of GP scores are more varied, and therefore different results have greater probability. We also want to observe that the least significant contributions are not the same as in the previous case.

# Exercise 40

### Primary score is MP. Calculate EMGSB for all teams at 6 points.

Let's extract from the general crosstable the data relevant to the tied teams (see previous examples). For this calculation, we need GP scores of the involved teams and the MP scores of their opponents. Once again, the calculation method is identical to that seen in the previous exercise.

The case of team #7 highlights that, in the Sonneborn-Berger system, there is no need for special considerations for forfeit losses and zero-point byes (pre-announced absences), as *their contribution is always null*. However, it remains necessary to consider the half-point byes, which fall under the category of voluntary absences but provide a non-zero contribution. (These may need to be discarded when applying the Cut-1 modifier.)

#	TEAM	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	EMGSB
	Giraffes					14w2	8b2	1b1	10w21⁄2	9b2	13w2	ZPB	
-	, Team GP	6	1 1 1/-	7	1214	2,0	2,0	1,0	2,5	2,0	2,0	0,0	60 F
<b>′</b>	Opponent MP	0	1172	· /	1372	4	7	10	5	6	6	6	00,5
	ESB Contribute					8,0	14,0	10,0	12,5	12,0	12,0	0,0	
_									T				
#	TEAM	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	EMGSB
	Iguanas					2w1	12b4	3b1	14w3	7w2	8b2	4w1½	
0	Team GP	6	1/1/4	6	1/1/4	1,0	4,0	1,0	3,0	2,0	2,0	1,5	02.0
3	Opponent MP	0	1492	0	1472	10	2	10	4	7	7	10	05,0
	ESB Contribute					10,0	8,0	10,0	12,0	14,0	14,0	15,0	
			r										
#	TEAM	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	EMGSB
	Moose					6w2	14b2½	4w1	11w2½	2b1	7b2	5w1⁄2	
	Team GP	6	1114	6	111/-	2,0	2,5	1,0	2,5	1,0	2,0	0,5	72 0
. ⊥,		0	111/2	0	11172	_		4.0		10	_	4.0	/3,0

4

10,0

7

14,0

Opponent MP

ESB Contribute

Since in this tie-break the contribute of an opponent is given by its total MP score multiplied by the GP score obtained against it, two teams that have won (or lost) against the same opponent may have a different contribution based on how well they won (or how poorly they lost). For example, teams #9 and #13 both played and won against team #14, but team #9 won with a 3-1 score, so the contribution it gets from this match is 3x4=12 points, while team #13 won with a  $2\frac{1}{2}-1\frac{1}{2}$  score, resulting in a contribution of 2.5x4=10 points. It may happen that this opponent giving different contributes to the two teams is just the one giving the least significant contribute. In this case, when applying the Cut-1 modifier, we are cutting contributes that are not all equal (in contrast to what happened in the previous examples, for instance, with the EMMSB variant). The application of the Cut-1 modifier may therefore have different effects for the two (or possibly more) teams that faced a same "least significant" opponent.

10

10,0

10,0

10

10,0

7

14,0

10

5,0

Incidentally, it is also worth noting that here the score used for the team in calculating the tie-break is the secondary score and not the primary one. Although this may seem "strange" at first glance, there is in fact no drawback to doing so.

### Exercise 41

Primary score is MP. Calculate EGGSB for all teams at 7 points. Resolve residual ties using the EGGSB-Cut 1 system.

Let's extract from the general crosstable the data relevant to the tied teams (see previous examples). For this calculation, we need GP scores of the involved teams and of their

#	ТЕАМ	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	EGGSB
	Falcons					13b2	5w1	8b3	3w1½	11b2½	-F	12w2½	
6	Team GP	7	1 2 1/2	7	1 7 1/2	2,0	1,0	3,0	1,5	2,5	0,0	2,5	157 50
0	Opponent GP	/	1272		1272	11,5	18,0	15,0	16,0	11,5	12,5	7,5	157,50
	ESB Contribute					23,00	18,00	45,00	24,00	28,75	0,00	18,75	
	1												
#	ТЕАМ	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	EGGSB
	Hippopotami					1b1½	7w2	6w1	12b3½	10b2	9w2	11w3	
0	Team GP	7	15	7	15	1,5	2,0	1,0	3,5	2,0	2,0	3,0	101 EA
0	Onnonent GP	/	12	/	12	175	13 5	12 5	75	13.0	14 5	11 5	101,50

opponents. Once again, the calculation method is always the same.

26,25

The possible values for this tie-break are highly varied, making differences very probable. Among the four variants of the ESB system, this is the one that provides the best resolution of the ranking (although this doesn't necessarily imply the highest reliability). It's worth noting that the numbers are large (because a result expressed in GP is numerically larger) and, to represent them correctly, two decimal places are necessary.

27,00

12,50

26,25

26,00

29,00

34,50

### 10.1 The Olympiad tie-break

ESB Contribute

The tie-break regulations ([16.6]) explicitly allow the competition rules to provide for a different treatment of unplayed matches. This happens, for example, in the Olympics. Let's take, for instance, the main tie-break indicated for the 2026 edition. Examining the regulations (see *FIDE Handbook, D.02.01, Appendix 2*), we see that this tie-break is rather similar to the Sonneborn-Berger, EMGSB Cut-1 variant.

However, in addition to the slightly different definition of unplayed rounds, the cutting procedure here is different: the preferred choice is the round in which the team received the PAB. Only if the team did not receive a PAB, the contribution from the opponent with the lowest match points score is excluded.

# To conclude the chapter, the reader is encouraged to practice calculating other tie-breaks. To help the reader to verify their results, the following table reports the tie-break values calculated with each of the four variants.

\*\*\*\*\*

#	Squadra	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7	EMM SB	EGM SB	EMG SB	EGG SB
1	Antelopes	10	171⁄2	10	171⁄2	8w21⁄2	4b1½	7w3	2b21⁄2	5w1½	+F	3b21⁄2	88	158,0	158,5	283,00
2	Bonobos	10	17	10	17	9b3	3w4	5b0	1w1½	13w3	4b21⁄2	10b3	74	144,0	131,0	249,75
3	Cougars	10	16	10	16	10w21/2	2b0	9w3	6b21⁄2	4w3	5b3½	1w1½	76	150,0	128,0	247,50
4	Deer	10	17	10	17	11b3	1w21⁄2	13b3	5w3½	3b1	2w11⁄2	9b21⁄2	72	146,0	130,0	253,50
5	Elephants	10	18	10	18	12w4	6b3	2w4	4b1⁄2	1b2½	3w½	13b3½	70	132,0	125,0	236,00
6	Falcons	7	121⁄2	7	121/2	13b2	5w1	8b3	3w1½	11b2½	-F	12w2½	32	79,5	73,0	157,50
7	Giraffes	6	111/2	7	131⁄2	14w2	8b2	1b1	10w21⁄2	9b2	13w2	ZPB	33	78,5	68,5	155,00
8	Hippopotami	7	15	7	15	1b1½	7w2	6w1	12b31⁄2	10b2	9w2	11w3	30	79,0	77,0	181,50
9	Iguanas	6	141⁄2	6	141⁄2	2w1	12b4	3b1	14w3	7w2	8b2	4w1½	26	66,5	83,0	180,00
10	Jackals	5	13	5	13	3b1½	11w1½	12b21⁄2	7b1½	8w2	14b3	2w1	19	53,0	72,5	161,75
11	Koalas	4	111/2	4	111/2	4w1	10b21/2	14w2	13b1½	6w1½	12w2	8b1	16	45,0	61,0	138,50
12	Lynxes	2	71⁄2	2	71⁄2	5b0	9w0	10w1½	8w1⁄2	PAB	11b2	6b1½	6	19,0	33,5	83,75
13	Moose	6	111/2	6	111/2	6w2	14b21⁄2	4w1	11w2½	2b1	7b2	5w1⁄2	30	72,0	73,0	152,50
14	Narwhals	4	111/2	4	111/2	7b2	13w11⁄2	11b2	9b1	HPB	10w1	PAB	19	48,0	58,0	140,75

# **11 EXTENDED DIRECT ENCOUNTER FOR TEAMS (EDE)**

The direct encounter tie-break for team tournaments [13.3] is rather complex, but it takes into account that some of the involved teams may not have faced each other. Additionally, it considers the possibility of using the secondary score when the primary score fails to resolve all ties. This tie-break is currently the only one that can appear multiple times in the list of tie-breaks [4.1]. For example, we could have the list {EDE, EGMSB, EDE}, where the remaining ties after the first application of direct encounter are resolved using Sonneborn-Berger, and any further remaining ties are again resolved using EDE.

In Swiss-system tournaments, unplayed matches are all ignored. On the contrary, in tournaments with predetermined pairings (round-robin, Scheveningen, Schiller, etc.), forfeits are treated just as played matches [15.2] – although tournament rules may still establish different behaviours.

The direct encounter tie-break is applied in multiple, possibly repeated, phases, as illustrated below.

- 1. First, a <u>separate crosstable</u> is created with only the matches between the tied teams, excluding those involving teams with different scores.
- 2. From this, a ranking is prepared for the relevant teams only ("separate ranking"), using the primary score.

In Swiss-system tournaments, some teams may not have faced each other, resulting in gaps in the separate crosstable. In certain cases, a team might inevitably rank first, regardless of any possible outcomes of the missing matches. In this case, the team is indeed ranked first, and we proceed to check if the same holds for a possible second place (and so on).

- 3. If all teams are still tied, the entire process is repeated using the secondary score instead of the primary one.
  - a. If exactly two teams remain tied, the tournament rules may specify the application of one or more tie-breaks specific to direct elimination tournaments [12] (which are generally suitable for team tournaments as well).
- 4. If more than two teams remain tied, a new separate crosstable is compiled with only the teams still tied, and the process starts anew.

The outlined procedure shows how the direct encounter tie-break can be applied multiple times to progressively smaller groups of tied teams – until no further ties can be resolved, and the next tie-break is invoked.

### Exercise 42

### Primary score is MP. Rank all teams at 4 points using the EDE system.

First things first, we need to extract the data of the involved teams from the crosstable.

#	TEAM	MP	GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7
11	Koalas	4	111/2	4w1	10b2½	14w2	13b1½	6w1½	12w2	8b1
14	Narwhals	4	111/2	7b2	13w1½	11b2	9b1	HPB	10w1	PAB

Since there are only two teams involved, this once only there is no need to physically compile a separate crosstable. The results show that the two teams played with each other and drew, remaining tied. Therefore, we must compare the secondary score, but it is also equal. Hence, we should move on to the next tie-break.

### Exercise 43

Primary score is MP. Rank all teams at 7 points using the EDE system.

Let's start by extracting the data for the involved teams from the general crosstable.

#	TEAM	MP	GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7
6	Falcons	7	121⁄2	13b2	5w1	8b3	3w1½	11b2½	-F	12w2½
8	Hippopotami	7	15	1b1½	7w2	6w1	12b3½	10b2	9w2	11w3

Once again, there are only two teams involved. Now, however, the teams played each other and team #6 won – hence, it precedes team #8 in the standings. Incidentally, we observe that a tie-break system based on secondary score, like MPvGP or some variants of Sonneborn-Berger (EMGSB, EGGSB) would yield the opposite result.

# Exercise 44

Primary score is MP. Rank all teams at 6 points using the EDE system.

Again, let's extract from the general crosstable the data for the involved teams.

#	TEAM	MP	GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7
7	Giraffes	6	111/2	14w2	8b2	1b1	10w2½	9b2	13w2	ZPB
9	Iguanas	6	141⁄2	2w1	12b4	3b1	14w3	7w2	8b2	4w1½
13	Moose	6	111/2	6w2	14b21/2	4w1	11w2½	2b1	7b2	5w1/2

In this case, it is advisable to explicitly compile the separate crosstable (on the right – game points (GP) obtained in the match are reported). The ranking, formulated based on the primary score (MP), sees #7 with two (MP) points, while #9 and #13 are tied at

	7	9	13
7	*	B2	W2
9	W2	*	-
13	B2	-	*

one point, but they have not played against each other. Therefore, we need to consider the possible outcomes of this match. For example, if #9 had won, it would move to three points, surpassing team #7. So, nothing can be said about this ranking. If everyone remains tied, we must move on to the alternative score (GP) – but even in this case, nothing changes. In conclusion, once again EDE cannot determine the ranking order.

# Exercise 45

### Primary score is MP. Rank all teams at 10 points using the EDE system.

Again, let's extract from the general crosstable the data for the five involved teams.

#	TEAM	MP	GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7
1	Antelopes	10	171⁄2	8w21⁄2	4b1½	7w3	2b21/2	5w11⁄2	+F	3b21⁄2
2	Bonobos	10	17	9b3	3w4	5b0	1w1½	13w3	4b21⁄2	10b3
3	Cougars	10	16	10w2½	2b0	9w3	6b21⁄2	4w3	5b31⁄2	1w1½
4	Deer	10	17	11b3	1w21⁄2	13b3	5w3½	3b1	2w11⁄2	9b21⁄2
5	Elephants	10	18	12w4	6b3	2w4	4b1/2	1b2½	3w1⁄2	13b31⁄2

All teams played each other (this does not happen often...) so we can compile a complete separate crosstable.

This case is a bit more complicated, so we'll follow the procedure step by step. First, with the data from the general crosstable, we compose the separate crosstable (on the right) and calculate the MP scores of the teams.

	1	2	3	4	5	MP	GP
1	*	B21⁄2	B21⁄2	B11⁄2	W11⁄2	4	8,0
2	W11⁄2	*	W4	B21⁄2	B0	4	8,0
3	W11⁄2	B0	*	W3	B31⁄2	4	8,0
4	W21⁄2	W11⁄2	B1	*	W31⁄2	4	8,5
5	B21⁄2	W4	W1⁄2	B1⁄2	*	4	7,5

Since these are all the same, the teams are still all tied and we must therefore try again, this time using the GP scores [13.3.1]. Doing so, we succeed in assigning the first place to team #4 and the fifth to #5, while the other three teams remain still tied.

We must therefore apply again the direct encounter, to the three remaining teams only, still using the GP because we are still within the same application of the tie-break, as indicated by [6], endnote. This time the

We thus arrive at the final ranking (on the right). It's worth taking a moment to consider the resulting ranking in light of the total scores obtained by the teams. In fact, a typical aspect of the direct encounter tie-break becomes evident here – team #2 is positioned ahead of team #1, *despite having a lower GP score*. Furthermore, the <sup>L</sup>

_	1	2	3	GP
1	*	B21⁄2	B21⁄2	5,0
2	W11⁄2	*	W4	5,5
3	W11⁄2	B0	*	1,5

scores are different, so they can determine the three positions in the ranking.

	Cross	table		EDE	
	MP	GP	MP 1	GP 2	GP 3
4	10	17	4	8,5	
2	10	17	4	8,0	5,5
1	10	171⁄2	4	8,0	5,0
3	10	16	4	8,0	1,5
5	10	18	4	7,5	

team with the highest GP score even ranks last, after the team with the lowest GP score!

#### \*\*\*\*\*

The above examples suggest that the direct encounter can rarely differentiate between tied positions. However, there is a widespread (although debatable) sentiment that it is a "fair" tie-break because it favours the team who defeated the others. As with all tiebreaks, the matter is philosophical, and it is always up to the tournament organizer to decide which tie-break strategy they consider better (and for the players to approve or disapprove, by participating or not in the tournament). We conclude, as usual, with a comparison between podium positions obtained by using various tie-break systems.

	TEAM		PUNT	UNTEGGI SONNEBORN-BERGER						BUCH	HOLZ			
#	Team	MP	GP	Adj MP	Adj GP	ЕММ	EGM	EMG	EGG	BH MP	C1	BH GP	C1	EDE
1	Antelopes	10	171⁄2	10	171⁄2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	3
2	Bonobos	10	17	10	17	3	4	2	3	3	4	3	3	2
3	Cougars	10	16	10	16	2	2	4	4	2	2	2	2	4
4	Deer	10	17	10	17	4	3	3	2	4	4	4	4	1
5	Elephants	10	18	10	18	5	5	5	5	5	2	5	5	5

## **12** SYSTEMS BASED ON BOARDS COUNT

The tie-breaks in this group are meant to be used in team knockout tournaments, when the tied teams have equal match and game scores. Individual forfeits are considered equivalent to actually played matches, and PABs (Pairing Allocated Byes) provide the same points as a regular win. The rules of an event may specify the use of one or more of these tie-breaks in any team tournament. Additionally, they may indicate their use in association with extended direct encounter tie-breaks when only two teams remain tied.

To apply these tie-breaks, knowledge of the player line-ups in the teams is necessary. Such information that does not appear in the crosstable and must be obtained from other sources (e.g., detailed pairings).

## 12.1 Board count (BC)

The board count is an example of score weighted according to the board position. The contribution of each board is given by the product of the result achieved on that board (regardless of the player) multiplied by the number of the board itself. The value of the tie-break is the sum of all these contributions (which usually are four).

To illustrate the behaviour of this tie-break, the following table shows the value of BC for each possible result of a team (of four players) that achieved a draw (1 MP, 2 GP).

<b>B1</b>	0	0	0	0	0,5	0	0,5	0,5	0	0,5	1	0,5	0,5	1	0,5	1	1	1	1
<b>B2</b>	0	0,5	0,5	1	0	1	0	0,5	1	0,5	0	0,5	1	0	1	0	0,5	0,5	1
<b>B3</b>	1	0,5	1	0	0,5	0,5	1	0	1	0,5	0	1	0	0,5	0,5	1	0	0,5	0
<b>B4</b>	1	1	0,5	1	1	0,5	0,5	1	0	0,5	1	0	0,5	0,5	0	0	0,5	0	0
BC	7,0	6,5	6,0	6,0	6,0	5,5	5,5	5,5	5,0	5,0	5,0	4,5	4,5	4,5	4,0	4,0	4,0	3,5	3,0

It is readily apparent that the result is lower the higher the boards on which the result was achieved. Since the underlying idea of this tie-break is to give more importance to the first board, decreasing gradually towards the last, it follows that the lower the total, the better the placement.

The same BC value can be obtained with different scores (for example, a BC value of 5 can correspond to a match lost, drawn, or won) – hence:

this tie-break can only be used if all teams have the same MP.

### Exercise 46

Primary score is MP. The first criterion in the tie-break list is EDE system with board count [13.3.2]. Establish the ranking order of teams #11 and #14.

Let's extract from the general crosstable the data for the involved teams.

#	TEAM	MP	GP	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	R6	R7
11	Koalas	4	111/2	4w1	10b21/2	14w2	13b1½	6w1½	12w2	8b1
14	Narwhals	4	111/2	7b2	13w1½	11b2	9b1	HPB	10w1	PAB

In the direct encounter match, which occurred in the third round, the teams drew, and the application of [13.3.1], first with MP and then with GP, leaves the teams still tied. We are thus in the scenario described by [13.3.2], and the tournament rules specify the application of BC. We need the line-ups of the two teams in the match, which we can derive from the pairing:

Table	id	team	result	team	id
5	11	Koalas	2-2	Narwhals	14
Board	id	player	result	player	id
1	33	Kris Kelpa	1-0	Nikola Neric	34
2	43	Kelly Kort	1/2-1/2	Noah Negus	55
3	52	Kirk Koman	1/2-1/2	Nicola Neba	37
4	73	Kurt Kontos	0-1	Nuccio Negri	62

Now we can calculate the tie-break values.

BC (#11) =  $1 \times 1 + 0.5 \times 2 + 0.5 \times 3 + 0 \times 4 = 1 + 1 + 1.5 + 0 = 3.5$ 

BC (#14) =  $0 \times 1 + 0.5 \times 2 + 0.5 \times 3 + 1 \times 4 = 0 + 1 + 1.5 + 4 = 6.5$ 

Finally, we compare the results to establish that the value for team #14 is higher, determining the precedence of team #11.

Incidentally, in this particular case, using the principle of giving more importance to the higher boards, one could have predicted the tie-break outcome simply by observing the results. However, a careful examination of the table shown at the beginning of the paragraph reveals that things are not always so straightforward.

# 12.2 Top board results (TBR)

This tie-break considers the results obtained on the higher boards (in only actually played games, regardless of the player), starting from the first board alone and then gradually extending to the lower ones until the tie is resolved. This tie-break can also be considered a kind of weighted average of scores per board, where the weights are progressively adjusted in case of persistent ties.

### Exercise 47

Primary score is MP. The first criterion in the tie-break list is EDE system with top board results [13.3.2]. Establish the ranking order of teams #11 and #14.

As seen in the previous example, the teams drew, and the application of [13.3.1] leaves them tied, so we move on to [13.3.2], where this time the TBR is applied. The formations of the two teams are needed again, which we report below.

Table	id	team	result	team	id
5	11	Koalas	2-2	Narwhals	14
Board	id	player	result	player	id
1	33	Kris Kelpa	1-0	Nikola Neric	34
2	43	Kelly Kort	1/2-1/2	Noah Negus	55
3	52	Kirk Koman	1/2-1/2	Nicola Neba	37
4	73	Kurt Kontos	0-1	Nuccio Negri	62

There is nothing to calculate since the application is immediate. On the first board, team #11 won, thus prevailing over the opponent. It's worth noting that this tie-break, although different from the previous one, has similar practical effects.

# 12.3 Bottom board elimination (BBE)

This tie-break is, in a sense, complementary to the previous one. If before we considered the top boards, now we progressively eliminate the last ones. This shifts the focus from the (usually) stronger players of the team to the (usually) weaker ones. Both tie-breaks favour the results of the higher boards, thus giving better results for teams whose players are lined up in order of playing strength.

## Exercise 48

Primary score is MP. The first criterion in the tie-break list is EDE system with bottom board elimination [13.3.2]. Establish the ranking order of teams #11 and #14.

As mentioned above, applying [13.3.1] leaves those teams still tied and we must resort to [13.3.2], where BBE is used. Once again, we need lineups.

Table	id	team	result	team	id
5	11	Koalas	2-2	Narwhals	14
Board	id	player	result	player	id
1	33	Kris Kelpa	1-0	Nikola Neric	34
2	43	Kelly Kort	1/2-1/2	Noah Negus	55
3	52	Kirk Koman	1/2-1/2	Nicola Neba	37
4	73	Kurt Kontos	0-1	Nuccio Negri	62

The application is straightforward.

BBE (#11) = 1 + 0.5 + 0.5 = 2

BBE (#14) = 0 + 0.5 + 0.5 = 1

Once again, team #11 prevail over the opponent.

# **13 SCORES AND SCHEDULE STRENGTH COMBINATION (SSSC)**

This is a somewhat intricate tie-break that considers both the team's secondary score and the strength of the encountered opposition at the same time, providing an estimate of the team's actual playing strength. However, calculating it is not too difficult, requiring in practice only a few more operations than the Buchholz, on which it partly relies.

The tie-break value is the sum of two elements. The first is simply the team's secondary score (GP if the primary score is MP, or vice versa), representing the overall results.

The second term, which assesses the strength of the opposition, uses the Buchholz system calculated based on the primary score. However, the Buchholz value can be numerically much greater than the secondary score and therefore, in order to balance the two terms, it needs to be normalized. This is achieved by dividing it by a <u>normalisation factor</u>, which essentially accounts for the imbalance between the two. The value of this factor is the same for all teams and is calculated by dividing the <u>maximum possible primary score</u> (which depends on the number of rounds) by the <u>maximum secondary score in a match</u> (which depends on the number of players in the team) and rounding down. Tournament regulations may specify a different normalisation value.

It's worth noting that, since the Buchholz manages unplayed matches (replacing them with "dummy" matches), the SSSC system implicitly does the same.

<u>Example 1</u>: Let's consider a tournament with eleven rounds and teams of four members, with MP as primary score (following the Olympic format). The maximum possible team score is given by the win score (2 MP) multiplied by the number of rounds (11), resulting in 22 MP. The maximum secondary score achievable in a round is equal to the number of players per team, which is 4. The quotient between these values is 22/4 = 5.5. Rounding down ([13.4.2.b]) this quotient, we obtain the normalization factor F<sub>N</sub>=5.

<u>Example 2</u>: Let's consider a tournament with nine rounds and teams of four members, with GP as primary score. The maximum possible team score is given by the maximum score per match (4 GP) multiplied by 9 rounds, resulting in 36 GP. The maximum secondary score achievable in a round is equal to the victory score (2 MP). Therefore, the normalization factor is  $F_N = 36/2 = 18$  (there's no need to round in this case).

What is the meaning of the normalisation factor?

To better focus on the significance of this factor, we want to estimate the ratio between the two terms that make up the SSSC tie-break. For simplicity, let's consider the case where the primary score is MP, and conventional scoring systems are used (2-1-0 for matches,  $1-\frac{1}{2}-0$  for games).

The maximum secondary score in a round,  $GP_{MAXR}$ , is simply equal to the number  $N_G$  of players fielded per team.

If  $N_R$  is the number of rounds, the maximum secondary score in this tournament is therefore:

 $GP_{MAX} = N_R \times N_G$ 

The maximum primary score,  $MP_{MAX}$ , is equal to the score  $S_W$  assigned for a match win multiplied by the number  $N_R$  of rounds:

 $MP_{MAX} = N_R \times S_W$ 

The maximum possible Buchholz, which would be obtained by facing all opponents with a perfect score, is therefore given by the maximum primary score multiplied by the number of matches:

 $BH_{MAX} = N_R \times MP_{MAX} = N_R \times N_R \times S_W.$ 

Using these boundary values, we can estimate the ratio R between the two components of the tie-break as

 $R = BH_{MAX} / GP_{MAX} = (N_R \times N_R \times S_W) / (N_R \times N_G), or$ 

 $R = (N_R \times S_W) / N_G = MP_{MAX} / GP_{MAXR}$ 

Apart from rounding (imposed for simplicity), this last expression is indeed equal to the normalization factor. We can therefore attribute it a meaning as the  $F_N$  factor, such that  $GP_{MAX} = BH_{MAX} / F_N$ . Hence, *this factor makes the value of the secondary score GP<sub>TOT</sub> comparable to that of the Buchholz*.

Of course, the reasoning could be repeated with another primary score or for other scoring systems, leading to similar conclusions.

### Exercise 49

### Primary score is MP. Calculate the SSSC tie-break value for all teams.

First, we calculate the normalization factor. The tournament has seven rounds, and the match win score is two MP. Therefore, the maximum primary score achievable in the entire tournament is  $S_{MP} = 2$  MP x 7 rounds = 14 MP. The maximum secondary score achievable in one round is, of course, one point for each player fielded, so in our case, it is 4 GP. Dividing the former by the latter and rounding, we obtain the value of the normalization factor, which here is 3.

MAX PRIMARY	MAX SECONDARY	QUOTIENT	NORMALISATION
SCORE (TOTAL)	SCORE (ROUND)		FACTOR
14	4	3,5	3

Using the values already calculated for the Buchholz (see exercise 35) and this normalization factor, we can now easily calculate the tie-break for each team. As an example, let's calculate it for team #1. The opposition is given by the Buchholz (calculated on the primary score) divided by the normalization factor:  $OPP_1 = BH_1 / F_N = 64 / 3 \approx 21.3$  (for our convenience, the result is rounded to one decimal place). By adding this term to the final GP score of the team, we get  $SSSC_1 = GP_1 + OPP_1 = 17.5 + 21.3 = 38.8$ .

Proceeding similarly for the other teams, we can compile the following table.

#	ТЕАМ	MP (PRI)	GP (SEC)	BH (MP)	OPPOSITION	SSSC
1	Antelopes	10	17,5	64	21,3	38,8
2	Bonobos	10	17,0	57	19,0	36,0
3	Cougars	10	16,0	58	19,3	35,3
4	Deer	10	17,0	56	18,7	35,7
5	Elephants	10	18,0	55	18,3	36,3
6	Falcons	7	12,5	46	15,3	27,8
7	Giraffes	6	11,5	44	14,7	26,2
8	Hippopotami	7	15,0	41	13,7	28,7
9	Iguanas	6	14,5	50	16,7	31,2
10	Jackals	5	13,0	44	14,7	27,7
11	Koalas	4	11,5	41	13,7	25,2
12	Lynxes	2	7,5	41	13,7	21,2
13	Moose	6	11,5	52	17,3	28,8
14	Narwhals	4	11,5	36	12,0	23,5

#### \*\*\*\*

Let's conclude this chapter by comparing the podium positions given by the various tiebreaks.

TEAM		SCO	SCORES SO			NNEBORN-BERGER			BUCHHOLZ				
#	Team	МР	GP	ЕММ	EGM	EMG	EGG	BH MP	C1	BH GP	C1	EDE	SSSC
1	Antelopes	10	171⁄2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	3	1
2	Bonobos	10	17	3	4	2	3	3	4	3	3	2	3
3	Cougars	10	16	2	2	4	4	2	2	2	2	4	5
4	Deer	10	17	4	3	3	2	4	4	4	4	1	4
5	Elephants	10	18	5	5	5	5	5	2	5	5	5	2

It is worth noting that SSSC rewards with the second place the high game score of team #5, which almost all other tie-breaks would assign to the fifth place (whereas the MPvGP system would even place it in the first position). Conversely, it gives the fifth place to the relatively low score of team #3, which other tie-breaks position at the second place.

# **TABLE OF CHANGES**

(not reported are simple changes to article references, created by the introduction of new articles)

### <u>C.04.1 – BASIC RULES FOR SWISS SYSTEMS</u> <u>C.04.3 – FIDE (DUTCH) SYSTEM</u>

Art.	REMOVED TEXT / NEW TEXT	Reason
	C.04.1 – BASIC RULES FOR SWISS SYSTEMS	
1.d	A player who has already received a pairing-allocated bye, or has already scored in one single round, without playing, as many points as rewarded for a (forfeit) win due to an opponent not appearing in time, shall not receive the pairing-allocated bye.	This makes the full-point by equivalent to a forfeit win: a player who gets a full-point by e is prevented from getting a pairing-allocated by e.
	<u>C.04.3 – FIDE (DUTCH) SYSTEM</u>	
	Version to be presented at the 94 <sup>rd</sup> FIDE Online Congress in 2023 approved at the 87th FIDE Congress in Baku 2016. <u>Terms and Definitions</u> and <u>Pairing Guidelines For Programmers</u> added at the 88 <sup>th</sup> FIDE Congress in Goynuk 2017. See <u>https://spp.fide.com/fide-dutch-extras/</u> .	The new part will be replaced after approval. <u>Pairing Guidelines For Programmers</u> are to be reviewed after the changes.
A.3	A scoregroup is normally composed of (all) the players with the same score. The only exception is the special "collapsed" scoregroup defined in A.9. A (pairing) bracket is a group of players to be paired. It is composed of players coming from one same a non-empty scoregroup (called resident players) and (possibly) of players who remained unpaired after the pairing of the previous bracket.	As a consequence of the simplification of the pairing process, the special "collapsed" scoregroup has been removed from the system. Same wording as in the more recently redefined Burstein System, except for the "non-empty" attribute, which is a clarification.
A.4.b	After two players with different scores have played each other in a round, the higher ranked player receives a downfloat, the lower one an upfloat. A player who, for whatever reason, <del>does not play</del> scores without playing in a round more points than those rewarded for a loss, also receives a downfloat	The main reason for considering players who forfeited or had a zero-point bye to be downfloaters was to prevent them from getting a pairing-allocated bye after already missing a game. Now, the new C.9 criterion prevents this from happening.
A.8 (note)	The artificial value defined above was chosen in order to be strictly less than the lowest score of the bracket, and generic enough to work with different scoring-point systems and in presence of non-existent, empty or sparsely populated brackets scoregroups that may follow the current one.	The mention of "brackets" was incorrect: a bracket is statically followed by scoregroups.

A.9	Round-Pairing Outlook	The first sentence has been moved to reflect
	The pairing of a round (called round-pairing) is complete if all the players (except at most one, who receives the pairing-allocated bye) have been paired and the absolute criteria C.1-C.3 have been complied with.	the wording of the recently redefined Burstein System. The same goes for the added parenthetic clause at the end. The removed parts are a consequence of the simplification of the pairing process.
	If it is impossible to complete a round-pairing, the arbiter shall decide what to do.	
	Otherwise, t The pairing process starts with the top scoregroup, and continues	
	bracket by bracket until all the scoregroups, in descending order, have been used	
	and the round-pairing is complete.	
	If it is impossible to complete a round-pairing, the arbiter shall decide what to do.	
	However, if, during this process, the downfloaters (possibly none) produced by the	
	bracket just paired, together with all the remaining players, do not allow the	
	completion of the round-pairing, a different processing route is followed. The last	
	paired bracket is called Penultimate Pairing Bracket (PPB). The score of its resident	
	players is called the "collapsing" score. All the players with a score lower than the	
	collapsing score constitute the special "collapsed" scoregroup mentioned in A.3.	
	The pairing process resumes with the re-pairing of the PPB. Its downfloaters,	
	together with the players of the collapsed scoregroup, constitute the Collapsed Last	
	Bracket (CLB), the pairing of which will complete the round-pairing.	
	Section B describes the pairing process of a single bracket.	
	Section C describes all the criteria that the pairing of a bracket has to satisfy (in	
	order of priority)	
	Castion E describes the colour ellocation rules that determine which relevant will	
	section E describes the colour allocation rules that determine which players will	
D 4	play with <b>#W</b> nite.	
B.4	Evaluation of the candidate	See the new C.5 (PAB Criterion) -not a strict
	If the candidate built as shown in B.3 complies with all the absolute and completion criteria (from C.1 to C.54), and all the quality criteria from C.65 to C.2119 are fulfilled the candidate is called "perfect" and is (immediately) accorded. Otherwise	and the new C.9, which explain the new wording and references.
	apply B.5 in order to find a perfect candidate; or, if no such candidate exists, apply B.8.	
B 8	Actions when no perfect candidate exists	
<b>D</b> .0	Choose the best available candidate. In order to do so, consider that a candidate is	
	better than another if it better satisfies the PAB Criterion (C 5) or a quality criterion	
	$(C_{65-C} 2119)$ of higher priority: or all quality criteria being equally satisfied it is	
	generated earlier than the other one in the sequence of the candidates (see B.6 or	
	B 7)	
CA	$\frac{1}{1000}$ if the current bracket is the PDP (see A 0); choose the set of after the bracket has	The first clause was removed as a
C.4	been paired, its downfloaters, together with the players from all the remaining	consequence of the simplification of the pairing process.
	scoregroups, shall allow the completion of in order to complete the round-pairing.	The wording has then been adjusted to clarify the goal of the Completion Criterion.
C.5	PAB Criterion	New criterion, introduced to ensure that the
	minimize the score of the assignee of the pairing-allocated-bye.	pairing-allocated bye always goes to somebody with the lowest possible score (as
		happens in the other pairing systems).
C.6	minimize the number of downfloaters (equivalent to: maximize the number of pairs).	The text of the criterion and the note have been reversed to have all "minimize"(s) in the criteria.
C.8	if the current bracket is neither the PPB nor the CLB (see A.9): choose the set of	The first clause has been removed as a
2.0	downfloaters so that in order first to maximize the number of pairs and then to	consequence of the simplification of the
	minimize the PSD (see C.5 and C.6) in the following bracket the following	pairing process.
	bracket) every criterion from (1 to (7 is complied with	The rest is a more synthetic version of the same criterion from the Burstein System
CO	minimize the number of unplayed somes of the paristics of the relation electrical	Now oritorion to align the pairing allocated
0.9	bye.	by assignment with what is done in other systems.

# **Tournament Entry Portal**

# **Functional Specification**

# Author: IA Hendrik du Toit

Document type	Report
Subject of Report	Tournament Entry Portal- Raw Online Questionnaire Collation
<b>Document version</b>	1.7
Date	November 30 <sup>th</sup> , 2023

# Contents

1. OI	BJECTIVE OF THE FUNCTIONAL SPECIFICATION	6
2. IN	ITRODUCTION	7
2.1	CHALLENGES AND ISSUES	7
2.2	Contact Information and Delays	8
2.3	Roles and Responsibilities	8
2.4	TOURNAMENT DIVERSITY	9
2.5	Alignment with FIDE's Mission	
2.6	SIMILAR SYSTEMS OR INSPIRATION	
2.7	Project Timeline and Phases	
2.8	Risks	
3. SC	COPE AND CONTEXT	
3.1	TOURNAMENT COVERAGE	
3.2	CURRENT PROCESSES AND CHALLENGES	
3.3	INTEGRATION AND SYSTEM COMPATIBILITY	
3.4	REGULATORY AND LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS	
3.5	Stakeholder Roles	
3.6	CONSTRAINTS AND LIMITATIONS	
3.7	EXPECTED IMPACT	
3.8	Project Timeline	14
4. ST	FAKEHOLDERS	
4.1	Primary Stakeholders	
4.2	User Roles	14
4.3	TECHNICAL TEAM	
4.4	EXTERNAL PARTNERS AND VENDORS	
4.5	REGULATORY ENTITIES	
4.6	User Groups and Preferences	
4.7	Collaboration and Communication	
5. RI	EQUIREMENTS AND FEATURES	
5.1	USER PROFILES AND COMMUNICATION	
5.2	TOURNAMENT MANAGEMENT	
5.3	Invitation and Contract Management	
5.4	DATA INTEGRATION AND SECURITY	
5.5	FEEDBACK AND FUTURE ENHANCEMENTS	
6. TI	ECHNICAL CONSIDERATIONS	

Security	20
SCALABILITY AND PERFORMANCE	20
INTEGRATION WITH EXISTING SYSTEMS	21
USER EXPERIENCE AND ACCESSIBILITY	21
Technology Stack	21
DATA BACKUP AND RECOVERY	22
Development and Testing	22
DOCUMENTATION AND TRAINING	22
resting and deployment	23
TESTING STRATEGY	23
TEST SCENARIOS AND CASES	24
Performance Testing	25
Security Testing	27
USER ACCEPTANCE TESTING (UAT)	29
Regression Testing	
HOSTING ENVIRONMENT	
USER TRAINING AND DOCUMENTATION	35
Monitoring and Support	
SUPPORT AND TRAINING	
USER TRAINING	
TRAINING MATERIALS	
TRAINING DELIVERY METHODS	
Administrator Training	
User Support Channel	
SUPPORT RESPONSE TIME	
Feedback and Improvement	
Continuous Training and Updates	
User Engagement and Community Building	
0 Multilingual Support	
FUTURE ENHANCEMENTS	
1 USER FEEDBACK AND PRIORITIZATION	
2 FEATURE ROADMAP	
3 User Experience Improvements	
<ul> <li>3 User Experience Improvements</li> <li>4 Integration and Compatibility</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>3 User Experience Improvements</li> <li>4 Integration and Compatibility</li> <li>5 Security and Compliance Updates</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>3 USER EXPERIENCE IMPROVEMENTS</li> <li>4 INTEGRATION AND COMPATIBILITY</li> <li>5 SECURITY AND COMPLIANCE UPDATES</li> <li>6 SCALABILITY AND PERFORMANCE IMPROVEMENTS</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>3 USER EXPERIENCE IMPROVEMENTS</li></ul>	
<ul> <li>3 USER EXPERIENCE IMPROVEMENTS</li></ul>	
<b>F</b> <b>S</b> <b>U</b> <b>U</b>	SECURITY

10.1	0 Inte	ERNATIONALIZATION AND LOCALIZATION					
11.	PHASED	APPROACH – CHARTING THE ROAD AHEAD					
11.1	Compri	EHENSIVE DATA AND PROCESS ANALYSIS:					
11.2	VENDO	R EVALUATION AND FUNCTIONALITY MATRIX:					
11.3	Cost E	STIMATION AND FINANCIAL PLANNING:					
11.4	DECISIC	DECISION-MAKING ON DEVELOPMENT APPROACH					
11.5	IMPLEM	MENTATION ROADMAP					
11.6	Contin	VUOUS MONITORING AND EVALUATION					
ANNEX	URE A -	LIST OF 3 <sup>RD</sup> PARTY VENDORS	ERROR! BOOKMARK NOT DEFINED.				
ANNEX	URE B -	PROPOSAL BY MANGED EVENTS	ERROR! BOOKMARK NOT DEFINED.				
ANNEX	URE C -	OMNIA CHESS	ERROR! BOOKMARK NOT DEFINED.				
ANNEX	URE D -	FEDCHESS	ERROR! BOOKMARK NOT DEFINED.				

# **Potential Conflict of Interest**

- Professional Background and Role: I am currently engaged as a Senior Full Stack and Lead Developer. This role has equipped me with extensive expertise and a deep understanding of the technical aspects relevant to this project.
- 2. **Involvement in Similar Projects:** It is pertinent to disclose that I am actively involved in the development of a system that bears similarities to the subject of this report. This involvement may present a potential conflict of interest, which I wish to transparently acknowledge.
- 3. **Source of Expertise and Knowledge:** The insights and recommendations presented in this document are grounded in my years of professional experience in the field of software development. This experience has been instrumental in shaping my understanding and analysis of the technical specifications discussed herein.
- 4. **Intellectual Property Considerations:** I wish to clarify that most of the information, ideas, and concepts shared in this document are derived from my personal intellectual property. They are the product of my professional experiences and expertise in software development.
- 5. **Commitment to Objectivity:** Despite the potential conflict of interest, I am committed to maintaining the highest standards of objectivity and integrity in presenting this report. My aim is to provide unbiased, fact-based analysis and recommendations to the best of my knowledge and professional judgment.

IA Hendrik du Toit

# 1. Objective of the Functional Specification

The objective of a Functional Specification in software development and systems engineering is to clearly and comprehensively outline the functionality and requirements of a proposed system or product. Key aspects of this objective include:

- 6. **Defining System Functionality:** It provides a detailed description of the system's functions, features, and operations. This can include specific behaviours, actions, inputs, outputs, and user interactions.
- 7. **Communicating Requirements** It serves as a communication tool between stakeholders, including developers, project managers, clients, and end-users. By clearly outlining the expectations and requirements, it ensures that everyone involved has a shared understanding of what the system should do.
- 8. **Guiding Development and Design** The functional specification acts as a roadmap for developers and designers, giving them a clear set of criteria and functionalities to implement. This helps in maintaining focus and direction during the development process.
- 9. **Setting Benchmarks for Testing and Validation** It establishes the criteria against which the final product will be tested and validated. By comparing the system's actual functionalities with those outlined in the specification, testers can verify whether the system meets the intended requirements.
- 10. **Managing Scope and Avoiding Scope Creep** By providing a detailed outline of the system's functionalities, the specification helps in managing project scope. It acts as a reference point to ensure that features or changes that are not part of the original plan are carefully evaluated before being included.
- 11. **Facilitating Change Management** In the event of changes to system requirements, the functional specification can be updated to reflect these changes, helping in managing the change process and keeping the project on track.
- 12. **Providing a Basis for Estimates and Scheduling** It aids in estimating resources, time, and cost required for the project, as it gives a clear picture of the system's complexity and requirements.
- 13. **Assisting in User Documentation and Training** The specification can be used as a foundation for creating user manuals, training materials, and help guides, as it contains detailed information about the system's functionality.

In summary, a Functional Specification is a critical document in the system development lifecycle, aimed at ensuring clarity, facilitating effective communication, guiding development, and ensuring that the final product meets the intended requirements and user needs.

# 2. Introduction

## 2.1 Challenges and Issues

2.1.1 Primary Goal of the Tournament Entry Portal Project

- Automate the current manual system: Implement processes to transition from a manual system to an online system with checks and balances, accessible to the chess community, while retaining FIDE's corporate identity and portraying a professional organization.
- **Entry Mechanism for Players:** Provide a streamlined entry process for players into FIDE tournaments.
- **Registration System:** Develop a registration system for both team and individual tournaments, usable by FIDE, national federations, chess clubs, and other organizers.
- **Optimization of Registration Processes:** Streamline and digitize the registration process for world events organized by FIDE.
- **Comprehensive Event Management:** Include features for event management, transportation (including VISA processing), itinerary and boarding management, accreditation systems, and a ticketing portal.
- 2.1.2 Challenges and Issues in Current Tournament Entry Process
  - **Manual Systems:** Existing systems are manual, lack central record-keeping, and require reinventing processes for each new tournament.
  - **Inefficiencies:** Data collection from players, manual contracts, lack of direct imports of players into endorsed programs, and communication challenges with organizers and players.
  - Lack of Official Registration System: Each organizer independently creates a system, often inefficiently due to time constraints and lack of expertise.
- 2.1.3 Main Objectives for the Portal
  - Eliminate Manual Processes: Automate registration and official processes, improve speed, ensure proper record-keeping, and standardize processes.
  - **Official Registration System:** An official system with different functionalities for various types of tournaments (team and individual).
  - **Optimization and Standardization:** Improve the process of data entry and standardize the registration process.

- 2.1.4 Key Requirements for the Portal
  - **Comprehensive Functionality:** Include process automation, record keeping, office and member administration, tournament management, contract management, accommodation management, and travel arrangements.
  - **Integration with Existing Systems:** Incorporate FIDE ratings, payment systems, and functions for automatic preparation of invitations.
  - User Accessibility and Security: Ensure modern, easy access for both FIDE and customers, with robust cybersecurity.

# 2.2 Contact Information and Delays

- 2.2.1 Impact of Manual Contract Process
  - **Resource and Efficiency Impact:** The current manual process burdens legal resources, slows down operations, and is time-consuming.
  - **Importance of Direct Contact:** Direct contact with players is crucial for managing accommodations, visa issues, and providing quality services.
- 2.2.2 Primary Users of the Portal
  - **Diverse User Base:** Global Strategy Commission, Events Commission, Organizers, Players, Other FIDE Staff, National Federations, and the General Public.
  - **Impact on Interactions and Responsibilities:** Simplified registration procedures and better communication.

# 2.3 Roles and Responsibilities

- 2.3.1 Standardisation Task Force Committee
  - Initiation and Follow-up: The Standardisation Task Force Committee is responsible for initiating the portal creation and ensuring alignment, standardization, and optimization of FIDE events.

### 2.3.2 Events Commission (EVE)

- 1. EVE is responsible for FIDE Competitions outside the aegis of GSC and administering the International Organiser title process.
- 2. EVE is responsible for suggesting amendments for the following regulations to Council, and applying them in their ongoing responsibilities:
  - Regulations on Seminars & Title Award for Organisers

- General Regulations for FIDE Competitions
- Regulations for World competitions outside the World Championship cycle and not under the aegis of GSC
- 2.3.3 Global Strategy Commission (GSC)
  - 1. GSC develops a long-term strategy of worldwide chess development and ensures that events in the World Championship cycle are organised.
  - 2. GSC is responsible for suggesting amendments for the following regulations to Council, and applying them in their ongoing responsibilities:
    - Olympiad and FIDE Top-Level Competitions
    - World Championship Cycle
    - Recommendations for the Organisation of FIDE Top-Level Competitions

### 2.3.4 Technical Commission (TEC)

- 1. TEC provides information for organisers to prepare their tournaments, and tests electronic devices to ensure they are compliant with FIDE standards.
- 2. Amongst others, TEC has the following ongoing responsibilities:
  - Develop minimum usability guidelines, UX / UI / traceability recommendations for tournament software.
  - Certify software programs that meet the established criteria, pending a final approval by the FIDE Council.
  - Develop standards to ensure adoption of Chess ID by all tournament software.
  - Develop open protocols for data exchange between electronic chess devices. Test and certify software implementations of such protocols.
- 3. Amongst others, TEC is responsible for suggesting amendments for the following regulations to Council, and applying them in their ongoing responsibilities:
  - General Handling Rules for Swiss Tournaments
  - Other FIDE Approved Pairing Systems
  - Endorsement of a Software Program

### 2.4 **Tournament Diversity**

2.4.1 Variation in Tournaments

• **Diverse Formats and Participants**: Tournaments vary widely in size, format, participants, time control, and qualifying system.

• Focus for Portal Implementation: Focus on large-scale tournaments like the Olympiad for initial testing and implementation.

### 2.5 Alignment with FIDE's Mission

2.5.1 Anticipated Benefits

**Streamlining Entry Process:** Saving time and resources, better event organization, and modernising FIDE's approach to tournament management.

# 2.6 Similar Systems or Inspiration

**Existing Systems:** Various existing systems in the chess and sports industry can inspire the development of the portal, with a focus on integrating multiple sub-systems to meet FIDE's unique needs. See **Error! Reference source not found.Error! Reference source not found.** 

# 2.7 **Project Timeline and Phases**

**Chess Olympiad 2024:** The portal should be operational before the Chess Olympiad in 2024, with a proposed timeline to finalize technical specifications within two months and subsequent phases for provider selection, development, and testing.

### 2.8 Risks

2.8.1 Vendor Lock-in

- **Long-term Commitment Risks:** There is a risk of being locked into a vendor without future expansion capabilities in areas like integration with ratings, title management, federation management, etc.
- **Difficulty in Transition:** Exiting such commitments can be challenging due to data porting, functionality mapping, and retraining of staff and the entire community.
- 2.8.2 Loss of Corporate Identity
  - **Brand Dilution**: There is a risk of losing FIDE's corporate identity by adopting third-party solutions.

2.8.3 Running Dual Systems

- **Scope and Expansion Concerns:** The narrow scope of a "Tournament Entry Portal" may hinder future expansion.
- Administrative Complexity: Maintaining both the current FIDE

administration system and the new portal could lead to data anomalies, confusion, and administrative errors.

# 3. Scope and Context

## 3.1 Tournament Coverage

3.1.1 Types of FIDE Tournaments Covered

- **Comprehensive Coverage:** The portal will cover all FIDE tournaments, initially focusing on GSC tournaments.
- **Primary Focus:** Emphasis on major events such as the Olympiad, World Cup, World and European team, and individual championships.
- **High-Participant Events:** Priority given to events with many participants, particularly mass tournaments.
- 3.1.2 Tournament Variability
  - **Annual Event Count:** FIDE oversees approximately 25-30 diverse events yearly, varying in format, location, and scale.
  - Language and Geographical Considerations: English as the working language, with potential inclusion of Spanish, German, French, and Arabic to accommodate a global user base.

# 3.2 Current Processes and Challenges

3.2.1 Existing Tournament Entry Processes

- **Variability and Manual Processes:** Current systems vary with each organizer and department, mainly relying on manual methods like emails.
- Lack of Unified System: No consistent system is in place, leading to inefficiencies and the need for new systems for each event.

# 3.3 Integration and System Compatibility

- 3.3.1 Existing Systems for Integration
  - **Member Administration and Rating Systems:** Integration with in-house systems managing member federations and individuals, and FIDE's rating system.
  - **Complementary Tools:** Compatibility with tools like Microsoft Office, Google forms, and Swiss-Manager (not within FIDE).

- 3.3.2 Alignment with FIDE's Strategy and Mission
  - **Professional Image and Efficiency:** The portal will enhance FIDE's professional image and care for its members, aligning with the strategy of promoting chess.
- 3.3.3 Third-Party Integrations
  - Additional Functionalities: Integration with systems for tournament reports, tournament results, payment systems, visa invitations, and possibly single sign-on (SSO) options and mobile app development.

# 3.4 Regulatory and Legal Considerations

- 3.4.1 **Data Privacy and International Regulations:** Compliance with data protection laws and regulations relevant to esports and international chess events.
- 3.4.2 Compliance with FIDE Charter:
  - **Definitions FIDE Database:** the official database with biographical (profile) details of players, arbiters, trainers, organisers and officials with FIDE identity number, home federation, FIDE rating, FIDE titles and FIDE positions held as per the FIDE Directory, rated tournaments and match results, as well as the world, continental and country rankings occupied by the individual, as published on the FIDE website in accordance with general data protection rules.
  - **Definitions FIDE Positions:** the positions occupied by an individual in the organizational structures of FIDE, FIDE Continents and FIDE Zones and as published on the FIDE website as part of the FIDE Directory and FIDE database.
  - "Article 4.13 FIDE is committed to the protection of personal data of all chess stakeholders"
  - "Article 11.r) communicate and update, within one month of any change, the following data:
    - address and contacts.
    - registered email address, to be used for all official communications to and from FIDE, which allows to legally track and prove the delivery of their emails and documents, signed electronically.
    - name and contacts of their President and FIDE Delegate.

3.4.3 with respect to general data protection regulations.

### 3.5 Stakeholder Roles

3.5.1 Key Stakeholders

- **Diverse Involvement:** Involvement of Standardization Task Force, Events Commission, Global Strategy Commission, successful bidders, administrative staff, and member federations.
- **Roles and Responsibilities:** Overseeing competition organization, long-term chess development strategies, operational management, and player engagement.
- 3.5.2 Role of FIDE's Technical Team
  - **Consultative and Developmental Role:** Volunteer technical team to provide essential input in vendor selection or system development, with consideration for project management remuneration.
- 3.5.3 External Partners and Vendors
  - **Potential Involvement:** Deciding between in-house development or outsourcing, with subsequent maintenance by FIDE's technical resources. See for a list of potential third party vendors.

### 3.6 Constraints and Limitations

- 3.6.1 Project Constraints
  - **Budget and Resource Limitations:** Budget constraints and volunteer time limitations, necessitating efficient resource allocation and project management.
- 3.6.2 Risks and Obstacles
  - **Data Integration and Unique Functionalities:** Challenges in integrating existing large databases and meeting specific needs like player title management, a unique structural hierarchy and rating system.

### 3.7 Expected Impact

- 3.7.1 Operational Improvements
  - **Efficiency and Cost Savings:** Streamlining operations, optimising staff work, and potential for income growth through system functionalities like ticketing.

• Services to Members: Delivering services to member federations to improve their own corporate governance which in return will ease the task of FIDE.

### 3.8 **Project Timeline**

- 3.8.1 Development and Deployment Timeline
  - **Urgent Need and Phased Approach:** High priority for readiness by the 2024 Olympiad, with phased development starting from a basic member administration system to more complex functionalities.

# 4. Stakeholders

# 4.1 **Primary Stakeholders**

- 4.1.1 Roles and Responsibilities
  - **Key Entities:** Standardisation Task Force (STF), Management Board (MB), Events Commission (EVE), Global Strategy Commission (GSC), and Technical Commission (TEC).
  - **FIDE and Players:** FIDE as the governing body and players as the primary participants.

### 4.2 User Roles

- 4.2.1 Role of Players
  - **Registration and Interaction:** Players will update user accounts, register for tournaments, submit data, and provide feedback.
- 4.2.2 Responsibilities of Tournament Organizers
  - **Tournament Management Tasks:** Tournament registration and maintenance, allocation of hotels, logging flight details for transfers, contract maintenance, and registration of participants in the accreditation system.
- 4.2.3 Responsibilities of Federations
  - **Registration of Players and Structures:** Currently it is the responsibility of federations to register players, structures, and other management information. This will be the case for the foreseeable future.

# 4.3 Technical Team

- 4.3.1 Role in Development and Maintenance
  - **Provision of Expertise and Support:** The technical team at FIDE, a blend of salaried professionals and dedicated volunteers, is tasked with offering a broad spectrum of technical expertise and digital support. Their role is crucial in ensuring both the development and ongoing maintenance of systems operate smoothly and effectively.
  - **Comprehensive System Inventory Development**: A key responsibility of the technical team involves the creation and management of a detailed inventory. This inventory encompasses an exhaustive overview of all existing processes, the current infrastructure, and the available resources. This systematic compilation is essential for understanding the present state of operations and for planning future enhancements and integrations.

## 4.4 External Partners and Vendors

4.4.1 Involvement in the Project

• **Collaboration:** Potential involvement of external partners or vendors such as software developers, security experts, or third-party integrators.

### 4.5 Regulatory Entities

- 4.5.1 Compliance and Regulation Stakeholders
  - Acknowledging Regulatory Considerations: It is critical to recognize and address the role of regulatory or compliance entities relevant to the project. While specific mandates or expectations from these entities may yet need precise identification, their influence on the project's direction and compliance requirements is undeniable.
  - **Involvement of FIDE Legal Advisor:** To ensure comprehensive adherence to all regulatory demands, the active involvement of FIDE's Legal Advisor is indispensable. Their expertise will guide the project in meeting legal standards, mitigating risks, and aligning with both national and international regulatory frameworks. This proactive engagement is pivotal in navigating the complex landscape of legal and compliance obligations.

## 4.6 User Groups and Preferences

- 4.6.1 Specific Needs and Access Levels
  - **Diverse User Groups:** Office administrators, tournament organizers, arbiters, ratings officers, and players.
  - Access Management: Different levels of user access, such as Super Admin (FIDE Events Team), Admin (Organizers of EVE Tournaments), Federation, and Player.
  - **Functionality for Different Formats:** The portal should accommodate varying needs depending on tournament formats.
- 4.6.2 Role of FIDE Administrators
  - Administrative Functions: FIDE administrators will use the system daily for managing member federation details, organising, and registering tournaments, and overall governance of the portal.

## 4.7 Collaboration and Communication

- **Ticketing System:** Implementing a system like Jira for logging issues, requesting enhancements, and providing a platform for stakeholder collaboration.
- **Communication Channels:** Direct access, emails, social media, and collaboration tools for ongoing stakeholder interaction and feedback.

# 5. Requirements and Features

### 5.1 User Profiles and Communication

- 5.1.1 User Profile Requirements
  - **Essential Information:** Name, surname, email, mobile number, federation, country, rating, passport details, and titles.
  - **FIDE ID Integration:** Player data populated from their FIDE ID, including title, name, ratings, and federation.
  - Additional Details: Positions in federations (e.g., president, treasurer), and user preferences and logs.
- 5.1.2 Customization Options for User Profiles
  - **Record Keeping:** Maintain records of individuals' positions within their federations.

- **Personal Preferences:** Capturing food and health-related information, considering data privacy concerns.
- 5.1.3 Notification and Communication Mechanisms
  - **Diverse Channels:** Email, WhatsApp Business, direct messaging to mobile devices, SMS, social media, and a live chat support system.

### 5.2 Tournament Management

5.2.1 Creation and Maintenance:

- **Comprehensive Tournament Detailing:** This involves meticulous documentation of tournament specifics, including dates, locations, formats, and categories, ensuring clarity and accessibility for all stakeholders.
- **Defining Tournament Parameters:** Establishment of rules, entry criteria, and categorization (e.g., age groups, skill levels) to structure the tournament effectively and ensure fair play and competitiveness.
- **Regulation Compliance and Documentation:** Crafting and maintaining a robust set of regulations that govern the conduct of tournaments, ensuring adherence to both FIDE standards and local regulatory requirements.
- **Strategic Social Media Publication:** Leveraging social media platforms for widespread dissemination of tournament information, updates, and engaging content to enhance visibility and participant engagement.
- 5.2.2 Control and Access:
  - **Player Management:** Facilitating player registrations, managing profiles, and ensuring eligibility criteria are met, while providing players with access to tournament information and personal participation details.
  - Administrator and Organizer Empowerment: Equipping administrators and organizers with tools to efficiently manage tournaments, from logistical arrangements to real-time updates, enhancing the overall organizational efficacy.
  - **Arbiter Inclusion**: Integrating arbiter roles within the system, providing them with necessary tools for match oversight, rule enforcement, and decision recording, to uphold the integrity of the competition.
- 5.2.3 Integration:
  - Seamless Integration with Existing Systems: Ensuring the tournament
management system works in harmony with existing FIDE systems, particularly the rating system, to allow for real-time updates and accurate reflection of players' standings.

• **Robust Player Database Connectivity**: Establishing a dynamic link with the comprehensive player database for efficient retrieval and update of player information, thereby ensuring that tournament records are consistently accurate and up to date.

# 5.3 Invitation and Contract Management

- 5.3.1 Issuing Invitations
  - **Types of Invitations:** Open signups, organizer-selected players, and criteriabased selections (rating/sex).
  - **Process Publication:** Information about registration processes published on official webpages.
- 5.3.2 Contract Management
  - **Contract Visibility:** Allow contracts to be seen and signed within the portal, with content written outside the portal.
- 5.3.3 Electronic Signing Workflow
  - **Legal Compliance:** Adapt to the legal requirements of various countries, with a focus on electronic contract signing.

#### 5.4 Data Integration and Security

- 5.4.1 Data Integration Needs
  - **Key Integrations:** Full integration with FIDE rating systems and other existing databases.
- 5.4.2 Single Sign-On Functionality
  - **SSO Options:** Integration with email services like Gmail for ease of access.
- 5.4.3 Data Validation and Error Prevention
  - Accuracy Checks: Ensure correctness of details like FIDE ratings and flight information.
- 5.4.4 Tournament Calendar and Document Repository
  - **Calendar Features:** Basic information like date, name, place of tournaments.

- **Document Storage:** Contracts, passport scans, photos, and tournament files with varying access levels.
- 5.4.5 User Experience and Performance
  - **Design and Accessibility:** Mobile-friendly design, available in FIDE's official languages, and optimized for performance.
  - Authentication and Authorization: Username and password combination, possible 2-factor authentication, and linkage with FIDE ID.

# 5.5 Feedback and Future Enhancements

5.5.1 Strategic Development for Expansion:

Develop the system with a scalable architecture to seamlessly integrate diverse functionalities. This includes:

- **Live Ratings** Real-time updates of players' ratings for a dynamic and engaging user experience.
- **E-Commerce Capabilities** Incorporation of online retail features for chess paraphernalia, entry tickets, and equipment, enhancing revenue streams.
- **Rating and Pairing Systems** Inclusion of sophisticated algorithms for player rating calculations and tournament pairing processes.
- **Robust Administration System** Build a versatile administration interface for streamlined management of tournaments and user accounts.
- **Online Chess Platform Integration** Facilitate online gameplay, potentially opening avenues for virtual tournaments and training sessions.

5.5.2 Methodical Implementation Process:

- **Feature Prioritization** Initially concentrate on functionalities critical to FIDE tournaments, ensuring a stable and efficient rollout. Gradually expand to include additional features in alignment with user needs and organizational objectives.
- **Feedback Loop Management** Leverage technical commissions for systematically collecting, analysing, and responding to user feedback. This process will be instrumental in guiding feature enhancements and addressing user concerns.
- Strategic Third-Party Integrations Evaluate and incorporate third-party

systems and services, such as Chess-ID, keeping in mind existing sponsorship agreements and the potential for enhancing system capabilities.

• **Comprehensive User Testing** Implement a variety of testing methods, including A/B testing for user experience optimization, stress testing for system resilience under high loads, and rigorous security assessments to safeguard data integrity and user privacy.

# 6. Technical Considerations

#### 6.1 Security

- 6.1.1 Security Requirements
  - **Data Protection and Privacy:** Adherence to EU and USA laws for personal and financial data. Restricting user access to pertinent data only. High data protection for PII (Personally Identifiable Information).
  - **Compliance Regulations:** Compliance with GDPR and other relevant data protection laws.

# 6.2 Scalability and Performance

- 6.2.1 User Load and Traffic
  - **Scalability Design:** The system should be designed for both vertical and horizontal scaling. Cloud hosting could be considered for cost-effective resource management.
  - **Performance Benchmarks:** API responses should be in milliseconds, with optimized media content for various internet speeds.
  - **Future Growth and Scalability Considerations:** As the system evolves, encompassing both the functionality of existing systems and future enhancements, a key focus must be on scalability. This means designing the infrastructure and software architecture in a manner that supports expansion and adaptation to growing user numbers, increased data processing, and emerging technological advancements. The aim is to ensure that the system can efficiently handle an escalating volume of interactions and data without compromising on performance, security, or user experience. This forwardthinking approach is vital for accommodating the evolving needs of FIDE, its players, administrators, and the broader chess community.

# 6.3 Integration with Existing Systems

- 6.3.1 System Integration
  - **Integration with FIDE Systems:** Incorporate the rating system and potentially merge its functionalities into the new portal. FIDE ID to be the key connector.
  - **Third-Party APIs:** Integration with payment systems, notification systems, and other necessary APIs.

### 6.4 User Experience and Accessibility

- 6.4.1 UX Measures
  - **Design and Responsiveness:** Ensure the portal is user-friendly, responsive, and adheres to FIDE's official languages.
  - Accessibility Standards: The portal should accommodate users with disabilities.
- 6.4.2 Hosting and Infrastructure
- 6.4.3 Hosting Considerations
  - **Hosting Location and High Availability:** Determine hosting location, with emphasis on high availability and disaster recovery planning.
- 6.4.4 Cloud Infrastructure
  - **Cloud Service Providers:** Decisions on cloud service providers are pending.

#### 6.5 Technology Stack

- 6.5.1 Development Technologies
  - Languages and Frameworks: Python for backend, FastAPI for API integration, React for mobile interfaces, Reahl for frontend, and consideration for PHP, NodeJS, and AWS/Azure/Google Cloud services.
  - **Database Systems:** MySQL, HBase, S3, Redshift, and Postgres.
- 6.5.2 Data Management
  - **Storage Solutions:** Preference for MySQL and cloud-based storage solutions.
- 6.5.3 Monitoring Tools
  - Health and Performance Monitoring: Implementation of modern tools like

New Relic and Splunk for continuous monitoring.

- 6.5.4 Maintenance and Updates
  - **Continuous Improvement:** Utilization of Test-Driven Development (TTD), Continuous Integration/Continuous Deployment (CI/CD) pipelines, and DevSecOps processes.

#### 6.6 Data Backup and Recovery

- 6.6.1 Backup Mechanisms
  - **Data Safeguarding:** High availability system design and cloud-based solutions like AWS RDS for data backup.
- 6.6.2 Disaster Recovery
  - **Recovery Planning:** Development of a comprehensive disaster recovery plan is essential.

#### 6.7 Development and Testing

- 6.7.1 Development Methodologies
  - **Agile and DevSecOps:** Agile methodologies combined with DevSecOps practices for development lifecycle.
- 6.7.2 Testing Regimen
  - **Comprehensive Testing:** Functional, performance, security, and regression testing, with CI/CD pipeline integration.

#### 6.8 Documentation and Training

- 6.8.1 Documentation Provision
  - **Comprehensive Guides:** Provision of video and text guidelines, with technical documentation by the development team.
- 6.8.2 User Training Materials
  - **Ease of Use:** Focus on intuitive design, supplemented with videos and minimal user guides.

# 7. Testing and Deployment

# 7.1 Testing Strategy

- 7.1.1 Planned Testing Strategy
  - 1. Requirement Analysis Phase:
    - **Review Requirements:** Thorough understanding of software requirements to guide the testing process.
  - 2. Planning Phase:
    - **Test Plan Development:** Document outlining testing strategy, objectives, schedule, resource allocation, and testing environment.
    - **Risk Analysis:** Identify and plan for potential risks in the testing process.
  - 3. Design Phase:
    - **Test Case Development:** Create detailed test cases based on requirements covering all software aspects.
    - **Test Environment Setup:** Ensure the testing environment mirrors the production environment.
  - 4. Types of Testing:
    - **Unit Testing:** Test individual components or units of the software.
    - **Integration Testing:** Test the interfaces between integrated units.
    - **System Testing:** Test the entire system against specified requirements.
    - Acceptance Testing: Conducted by end-users to ensure software meets their needs.
  - 5. Execution Phase:
    - **Run Test Cases:** Execute test cases as per the plan.
    - **Defect Tracking:** Log and track resolution of defects or issues found during testing.
    - **Regression Testing:** Conducted whenever changes are made to ensure existing functionality is not affected.
  - 6. Non-Functional Testing:
    - **Performance Testing:** Test software performance under various

conditions.

- Security Testing: Check for vulnerabilities and data protection.
- **Usability Testing:** Ensure software is user-friendly and meets UI requirements.
- 7. Reporting Phase:
  - **Test Summary Report:** Detail what was tested, defects found, and overall software quality.
- 8. Maintenance Phase:
  - **Post-Deployment Testing:** Continuous testing after deployment for any issues in the production environment.
  - **Feedback and Improvement:** Gather feedback to improve both the testing process and software.
- 9. Test-Driven Development (TDD) Approach:
  - Incorporate TDD practices including unit tests, smoke testing, and integration tests.
- 7.1.2 Dedicated Testing Environment
  - 1. **Separate Environments:** Establishment of a dedicated testing environment is essential.
  - 2. Environment Types:
    - Development environment.
    - Staging environment (QA/UAT environment).
    - Production environment.

# 7.2 Test Scenarios and Cases

- 7.2.1 Specific Test Scenarios or Use Cases
  - 1. **Comprehensive Coverage:** Test cases should encompass all functionality requirements, including both positive and negative scenarios.
  - 2. Example Scenarios:
    - User Login Process:
      - Validate user ID.
      - Validate password length.

- Check the response to incorrect password attempts.
- 3. **Tournament Functionality:** Test cases for various tournament scenarios.
- 4. **Breakdown of Cases:** Include detailed scenarios to reduce complexity and ensure thorough testing.
- 7.2.2 Development, Documentation, and Execution of Test Cases
  - 1. Test Case Development:
    - Utilize final requirements specifications and historical data from past successes and failures.
    - Involve various interest groups in documenting test cases.
  - 2. **Rigorous Testing:** Apply the same level of rigorous testing whether FIDE opts for third-party software or in-house development.
  - 3. Documentation:
    - Document test cases in tools like Confluence.
    - Share documented cases with developers for unit test preparation.
  - 4. **Business User Involvement:** All test cases should be validated and signed off by business users.

#### 7.3 **Performance Testing**

7.3.1 Specific Performance Testing Objectives

- 1. Load Testing Objectives:
  - Assess system behaviour under expected load.
  - Identify performance bottlenecks.
  - Validate system stability and endurance.
  - Benchmark performance metrics.
- 2. Stress Testing Objectives:
  - Determine system limits and behaviour under extreme conditions.
  - Identify failure points and recovery mechanisms.
  - Test system failover capabilities.
- 3. Scalability Testing Objectives:
  - Measure system capacity for growth.
  - Assess effectiveness of scaling strategies.

- Predict future capacity needs.
- Test performance at different configurations.
- 4. Load Testing Emphasis:
  - Focus on user registration, particularly bulk registrations towards deadlines.
  - Provide options for import functionality where necessary.

#### 7.3.2 Performance Benchmarks and Response Time Targets

- 1. Web Applications:
  - Page load time: 2-5 seconds.
  - API response time: Under 500 milliseconds.
- 2. Enterprise Applications:
  - Database query response: Under 200 milliseconds.
  - Batch processing: Complete within a predefined window.
- 3. Mobile Applications:
  - Screen load time: 1-2 seconds.
  - Data fetching: Under 1 second.
- 4. E-Commerce Platforms:
  - Checkout process: Under 3 seconds.
  - Search functionality: Within 2 seconds.
- 5. Cloud-Based Services:
  - Data synchronization: Within a few seconds.
  - Service availability: Uptime of 99.9% or higher.
- 6. Financial Transactions:
  - Transaction processing: Within a few seconds.
- 7. Real-Time Systems:
  - Data processing: Often requires times in milliseconds.
- 8. General Benchmarks:
  - API response: Milliseconds.

• Image loading: Optimize for quick load with progressive enhancement to better quality.

### 7.4 Security Testing

- 7.4.1 Security Testing Process
  - 1. Initial Assessment:
    - Understand system architecture and functionality.
    - Conduct a risk assessment to identify potential threats and vulnerabilities.
  - 2. Code Reviews:
    - Utilize static application security testing (SAST) tools.
    - Conduct manual reviews, focusing on security-critical components.
    - Implement peer review sessions.
  - 3. Penetration Testing:
    - Engage external experts for black-box testing.
    - Conduct internal white-box testing.
    - Use automated penetration testing tools for known vulnerabilities.
  - 4. Vulnerability Scanning:
    - Regularly implement vulnerability scanning.
    - Update security practices based on emerging threats.
  - 5. Security Testing in Development Lifecycle:
    - Integrate security testing into CI/CD pipeline.
    - Adopt a 'shift left' approach for early-stage security considerations.
  - 6. Compliance and Standards:
    - Adhere to security standards like OWASP, ISO 27001, and industryspecific regulations.
  - 7. Incident Response and Remediation:
    - Establish an incident response plan.
    - Develop a strategy for quick remediation of vulnerabilities.

- 8. Training and Awareness:
  - Provide developer training on secure coding practices.
  - Conduct security awareness programs for staff.
- 9. Continuous Monitoring and Improvement:
  - Monitor security logs for suspicious activities.
  - Regularly update security strategies and practices.
- 10. Development Practices:
  - Code scanning as part of development check-in.
  - CI/CD for code management and security checks.

#### 7.4.2 Ensuring Data Security and Privacy During Testing

- 1. Test Data Management Tools:
  - Implement data masking and synthetic data generation.
  - Anonymize personal data in testing environments.
- 2. Access Control:
  - Restrict access to test environments.
  - Implement Role-Based Access Control (RBAC).
- 3. Secure Testing Environments:
  - Isolate test environments from production.
  - Utilize virtual machines or containers for added security.
- 4. Compliance with Regulations:
  - Ensure testing process adheres to data protection laws.
- 5. Data Encryption:
  - Encrypt sensitive data in transit and at rest in the testing environment.
- 6. Security Audits and Penetration Testing:
  - Regularly audit the testing environment.
  - Perform penetration testing to fix security weaknesses.
- 7. Secure Data Disposal:

- Ensure secure disposal or anonymization of data post-testing.
- 8. Monitoring and Logging:
  - Monitor access and activities in the test environment.
  - Implement anomaly detection systems.
- 9. Employee Training and Awareness:
  - Conduct regular training sessions on data security and privacy.
  - Educate staff on best practices for handling sensitive data.
- 10. Review and Update Policies:
  - Regularly review and update data security and privacy policies.
- 11. Use Secure Communication Channels:
  - Ensure secure networks for testing with necessary firewalls and intrusion detection systems.
- 12. Encryption and Data Law Compliance:
  - Encrypt data at rest.
  - Adhere to data protection laws of relevant countries.

# 7.5 User Acceptance Testing (UAT)

7.5.1 Plan for User Acceptance Testing

- 1. UAT Planning:
  - Define Objectives: Align UAT with user requirements and business processes.
  - Select Testers: Choose a diverse group of end-users based on skill levels and job roles.
  - Develop Test Cases/Scenarios: Create real-world test cases, ensuring they are understandable to non-technical users.
  - Prepare Test Environment: Set up an environment that mirrors the realworld deployment and is isolated from production.
  - Training and Documentation: Provide training and comprehensive documentation to testers.

- 2. Conducting UAT:
  - Execute Test Cases: Encourage testers to follow scenarios and use the portal normally.
  - Gather Feedback: Collect detailed user feedback, including difficulties and discrepancies.
  - Track and Manage Issues: Log and prioritize issues based on severity and business impact.
  - Regular Review Meetings: Discuss progress, queries, and feedback.
- 3. Post-Testing:
  - Addressing Issues: Collaborate with developers to resolve issues.
  - Re-Testing: Confirm issue resolution with users.
  - Final Approval: Obtain approval from stakeholders and end-users.
  - Documentation and Sign-Off: Prepare a final UAT report and obtain formal sign-off.
- 4. Best Practices for Involving End-Users:
  - Clear communication, empathy, effective feedback mechanisms, and acknowledgment of user input.
- 5. Test Tournament: Organize a test tournament with limited invites for practical testing.
- 7.5.2 Criteria and Metrics for UAT Success
  - 1. Test Case Completion and Success Rate:
    - Completion and success rates of test cases.
    - Number and severity of defects identified.
    - Defect resolution rate.
  - 2. User Satisfaction Surveys:
    - Feedback scores and qualitative feedback.
  - 3. Requirement Coverage:
    - Alignment with business requirements and identification of gaps.
  - 4. Usability Metrics:

- Ease of use and learning curve.
- 5. Performance Metrics:
  - Response time and system reliability during UAT.
- 6. User Engagement:
  - Level of participation and nature of change requests.
- 7. Compliance and Regulatory Adherence:
  - Adherence to industry-specific regulations.
- 8. Post-Deployment Metrics (If Applicable):
  - Adoption rate and nature of support requests post-deployment.
- 9. Business Impact:
  - Impact on business processes, efficiency, and ROI.
- 10. Successful UAT Indicators:
  - Formal approval and sign-off from stakeholders.
  - Readiness for deployment without significant reservations.
- 11. Additional Considerations:
  - Convenient navigation and error-free operation.
  - Smooth process flow and comprehensive user guides in multiple languages.

# 7.6 **Regression Testing**

- 7.6.1 Performing Regression Testing
  - **Commitment to Regression Testing:** Regression testing will be conducted to ensure updates do not introduce defects into existing features.

**CI/CD Integration:** Regression testing should be part of the Continuous Integration/Continuous Deployment pipelines.

#### 7.6.2 Maintenance and Execution of Regression Test Suites

- 1. Test Suite Development and Maintenance:
  - Develop comprehensive regression test suites based on critical

functionalities and user requirements.

- Prioritize test cases and automate as many as possible.
- Regularly update test suites to reflect application changes.
- 2. Integration in Development Cycle:
  - Integrate regression testing in the CI/CD pipeline.
  - Use version control for test scripts and ensure the test environment mirrors the production environment.
- 3. Test Execution Strategy:
  - Execute regression tests regularly (e.g., nightly, after major commits).
  - Use relevant test data and run tests in parallel where possible.
- 4. Monitoring and Reporting:
  - Monitor test execution for failures or unexpected behaviour.
  - Analyse test results and report key issues to stakeholders.
- 5. Continuous Improvement:
  - Use feedback to improve the application and test suite.
  - Regularly review test suite performance and optimize test cases.
- 6. Collaboration and Communication:
  - Keep stakeholders informed about test outcomes.
  - Encourage collaboration between developers and testers.
- 7. Risk-Based Approach:
  - Perform regular risk analysis to adjust the focus of regression testing.
- 7.6.3 Deployment Strategy
  - 1. Preparation Phase:
    - Finalize release content and set up the production environment.
    - Take comprehensive backups and conduct a final risk assessment.
  - 2. Testing and Validation Phase:
    - Conduct pre-deployment testing in a staging environment.
    - Perform UAT and security/compliance checks.

- 3. Deployment Planning:
  - Schedule deployment considering user activity patterns.
  - Develop a communication plan and a detailed rollout strategy.
- 4. Deployment Execution:
  - Consider phased rollout, such as canary releases and blue/green deployments.
  - Use feature toggling and monitor the system closely during deployment.
- 5. Post-Deployment Phase:
  - Perform validation checks and monitor user feedback.
  - Be prepared for rollback in case of critical issues.
- 6. Review and Documentation:
  - Conduct a post-deployment review and update documentation.
- 7. Continuous Monitoring and Support:
  - Continuously monitor system performance and provide user support.
- 8. Best Practices:
  - Automate deployment processes and engage stakeholders throughout the process.
  - Provide training for significant changes.
- 9. Major vs. Minor Deployments:
  - Major downtime, while minor deployments can occur live.

#### 7.7 Hosting Environment

- 7.7.1 Production Hosting Environment Considerations
  - 1. Server Configurations:
    - Hardware specifications tailored to the application's needs.
    - Scalable server setup (both vertically and horizontally).
    - Security hardening of the operating system and services.
  - 2. Load Balancers:
    - Distribution of traffic across servers for balanced load.

- High availability configurations for failover.
- SSL termination and server health checks.
- 3. Data Backup Solutions:
  - Regular backups with off-site storage.
  - Comprehensive backup testing and defined retention policies.
- 4. Database Management:
  - Optimized database configurations.
  - Database replication for redundancy and performance.
  - Robust backup and recovery processes.
- 5. Networking Considerations:
  - Adequate bandwidth for peak traffic.
  - Network security measures including intrusion prevention and DDoS protection.
  - Reliable DNS setup with failover solutions.
- 6. Monitoring and Logging:
  - System performance and application health monitoring.
  - Log management for security and troubleshooting.
- 7. Disaster Recovery and Redundancy:
  - Documented disaster recovery plan.
  - Redundancy in critical infrastructure components.
- 8. Compliance and Security:
  - Adherence to regulatory compliance standards.
  - Consideration of hosting provider's security certifications.
- 9. Scalability and Performance Optimization:
  - Auto-scaling capabilities.
  - Regular performance tuning based on data and load testing.
- 10. Maintenance and Updates:
  - Regular updates and patches.

- Change management for hosting environment updates.
- 11. Cloud Hosting Solutions:
  - Utilization of cloud services (e.g., AWS, Azure) for hosting flexibility and scalability.
  - Disaster Recovery and Business Continuity Plan
- 12. Importance of Disaster Recovery:
  - Disaster recovery should be a key consideration in the hosting environment design.
  - High Availability (HA) configurations are essential.
  - Planning for disaster recovery and business continuity is expected.

# 7.8 User Training and Documentation

- 7.8.1 End-User Training
  - **Training Materials and Guides:** End-users will be provided with training materials and user guides to effectively use the portal.
  - **Training Approach:** The plan includes comprehensive training sessions, emphasising clear communication and understanding of user needs, especially for non-tech-savvy users.

# 7.9 Monitoring and Support

7.9.1 Monitoring Tools and Mechanisms

- **Performance Monitoring:** Use APM tools for application performance and server health monitoring.
- **User Experience Monitoring:** Implement RUM and synthetic transaction monitoring.
- **Error and Exception Tracking:** Utilize tools for real-time error tracking and exception handling.
- **Network Monitoring:** Track network performance and security.
- **Database Monitoring:** Monitor database performance and query execution.
- **Security Monitoring:** Employ IDS, vulnerability scanning, and SIEM tools.
- Log Management: Implement centralized logging and analysis tools.
- Availability Monitoring: Use uptime monitoring tools.

- Load Testing: Conduct post-deployment load testing.
- **Feedback Loops:** Gather user feedback via surveys or feedback widgets.
- **Custom Metrics and Dashboards:** Track custom KPIs and use dashboard tools for visualization.
- **Best Practices:** Automated alerts, regular audits, scalability of monitoring setup.
- 7.9.2 User Support and Post-Deployment Issue Management
  - **Support Team Establishment:** Dedicated, well-trained support staff.
  - **Support Infrastructure:** Centralized help desk, FAQ, and knowledge base.
  - **Multi-Channel Support:** Email, phone, chat, and social media monitoring.
  - **Issue Tracking:** Use a ticketing system and manage SLAs.
  - **Proactive Communication:** For major issues, maintain transparency and regular updates.
  - **Feedback Mechanism:** Regular surveys and community forums.
  - **Continuous Monitoring:** Post-deployment system monitoring with alerts and notifications.
  - **Escalation Procedures:** Clear paths for issue escalation and regular review meetings.
  - **Regular Reporting:** Track support metrics and generate regular reports.
  - **Continuous Improvement:** Learn from issues to improve the product and update resources.
  - User Training and Resources: Offer training sessions and ensure access to helpful resources.
  - **Ticketing System:** Implement a system for users to report issues and raise complaints.

# 8. Support and Training

# 8.1 User Training

- 8.1.1 **User Training Requirements:** Training for players, administrators, and organizers is crucial for effective portal usage.
- 8.1.2 **Prerequisites:** The portal should be intuitive, requiring no specific prerequisites or advanced knowledge for access.

#### 8.2 Training Materials

- 8.2.1 **Types of Materials:** User guides, video tutorials, and interactive demos will be provided.
- 8.2.2 **Development and Accessibility:** Materials will be developed to be intuitive and made easily accessible to users.

#### 8.3 Training Delivery Methods

- 8.3.1 **Delivery Channels:** Training will be delivered through various methods, including in-person sessions, webinars, and online courses.
- 8.3.2 **Self-Paced Learning:** The option for self-paced learning will be considered.

#### 8.4 Administrator Training

- 8.4.1 **Training for FIDE Administrators:** Extensive training covering portal navigation, content management, user account management, data management, security, compliance, analytics, reporting, communication, and event management.
- 8.4.2 **Documentation:** Includes user manuals, quick reference guides, FAQs, best practices, and change logs.
- 8.4.3 **Ongoing Training:** Regular updates and feedback loops for continuous learning and improvement.

#### 8.5 User Support Channel

- 8.5.1 **Support Access:** Users can access support via designated channels, such as a helpdesk, ticketing system, email, or technical chatbots.
- 8.5.2 **Designated Channels:** An established support channel like a helpdesk or email support is anticipated.

#### 8.6 Support Response Time

- 8.6.1 **Response Times:** Expected response times will be set, prioritising support requests based on urgency.
- 8.6.2 **Service Level Agreements (SLAs):** SLAs or response time targets will be established.

#### 8.7 Feedback and Improvement

8.7.1 **Feedback Collection and Management:** Methods include online surveys, feedback widgets, interviews, social media monitoring, and email feedback.

- 8.7.2 **Feedback Analysis and Action Plans:** Regular reviews, impact analysis, and action plans will be developed based on feedback.
- 8.7.3 **User Involvement and Communication:** Involving users in beta testing and keeping them informed about feedback status and updates.
- 8.7.4 **Integration with Development:** Incorporating feedback into the development roadmap and using an agile approach for continuous improvement.

#### 8.8 Continuous Training and Updates

- 8.8.1 **Ongoing Training and Support:** Continuous training and support as the portal evolves will be considered.
- 8.8.2 **Informing Users of Updates:** Users will be informed of changes and updates, potentially via email, and additional training will be provided, as necessary.

# 8.9 User Engagement and Community Building

- 8.9.1 **Community Engagement Strategies:** Utilization of forums, discussion boards, or social media groups to build a sense of community among users.
- 8.9.2 **Sharing Success Stories:** User success stories and best practices will be shared to enhance user adoption and satisfaction.

#### 8.10 Multilingual Support

- 8.10.1 **Language Availability:** Support and training materials will primarily be in English, with potential for multilingual support in the future.
- 8.10.2 **Managing Language Preferences:** Language preferences will be managed within the portal to provide localized support, initially focusing on English with scope for future development in multiple languages.

# 9. Future Enhancements

# 9.1 User Feedback and Prioritization

- 9.1.1 **Feedback Collection:** Feedback and feature requests will be collected through established channels and categorized for analysis.
- 9.1.2 **Mechanisms for Submission:** Users will have the means to submit ideas and suggestions for portal improvements.

#### 9.2 Feature Roadmap

- 9.2.1 **Future Enhancements Plan:** A roadmap or plan for future portal enhancements is considered, structured around FIDE's calendar and portal goals.
- 9.2.2 **Prioritization Criteria:** Features will be selected based on their alignment with portal objectives and user needs.

#### 9.3 User Experience Improvements

- 9.3.1 **UX Enhancements:** Specific user experience enhancements, such as redesigns or improved navigation, are anticipated.
- 9.3.2 **Refining Usability:** User testing and feedback will play a key role in refining and enhancing the portal's usability.

### 9.4 Integration and Compatibility

- 9.4.1 **Integration Expansion:** Plans to expand integration capabilities with external systems are considered.
- 9.4.2 **Maintaining Compatibility:** The portal will adhere to best practices and industry standards to maintain compatibility with evolving technologies.

#### 9.5 Security and Compliance Updates

- 9.5.1 **Security Enhancements:** Regular security audits, vulnerability scanning, patch management, and continuous monitoring will be implemented.
- 9.5.2 **Data Privacy Regulation Changes:** The portal will adapt to changes in data privacy regulations, maintaining compliance through regular audits and updates.

#### 9.6 Scalability and Performance Improvements

- 9.6.1 **Scalability Measures:** The portal will adopt a scalable architecture, database optimization, cloud-based solutions, and performance monitoring.
- 9.6.2 **Performance Optimization:** Continuous monitoring and adjustment of API performance will ensure efficiency.

#### 9.7 Mobile and Multi-Platform Support

- 9.7.1 **Mobile Accessibility:** Enhancements to mobile accessibility and responsive design for different devices are planned.
- 9.7.2 **Multi-Platform Support:** Comprehensive support for various platforms, including iOS, Android, and web browsers, is considered.

### 9.8 Analytics and Reporting Enhancements

- 9.8.1 **Improving Analytics:** Integration with modern tools like Tableau and PowerBI will enhance analytics and reporting capabilities.
- 9.8.2 **Data-Driven Features:** Introduction of data-driven features and dashboards is anticipated.

### 9.9 Community and User Engagement Features

- 9.9.1 **Community-Building Features:** New features like forums, discussion boards, and social media integrations may be introduced.
- 9.9.2 **Refining Engagement** Strategies: User engagement and retention strategies will be continuously refined.

### 9.10 Internationalization and Localization

- 9.10.1 **Supporting Additional Languages:** Efforts to support more languages and cultural adaptations are planned.
- 9.10.2 **Accommodating Regional Preferences:** The portal will evolve to accommodate regional preferences and requirements based on user feedback and administrator experience.

# **10. Phased Approach – Charting the Road Ahead**

This section outlines a strategic, phased approach to developing the Tournament Entry Portal, ensuring that each step is methodically planned and executed.

#### **10.1 Comprehensive Data and Process Analysis:**

In-depth Examination of Current State:

#### 10.1.1 **Process Evaluation:**

- 1. Thoroughly review existing processes, systems, and infrastructure to understand current operational workflows and identify areas for improvement.
- 2. Gather any source documents used by current FIDE staff, historical organizers.
- 3. Interview organizers of the past Olympiads.

#### 10.1.2**Resource Inventory:**

- Data Assessment: Catalogue and assess the existing data types, volumes, and usage patterns.
- Database Structure Review: Analyse the current database architecture,

including schema design, data relationships, and storage practices.

- **Technology Audit:** Evaluate the technology stack in use, including software, platforms, and tools.
- 10.1.3 **Capacity Analysis:** 
  - **Server Capabilities:** Determine server specifications, including size, capacity, and performance metrics.
  - **Traffic Analysis:** Measure and understand daily traffic patterns, peak usage times, and bandwidth requirements.
  - Additional Considerations: Identify other critical factors such as data security, backup mechanisms, and disaster recovery plans.

### **10.2 Vendor Evaluation and Functionality Matrix:**

Desktop Study for Vendor Assessment:

- Conduct a comprehensive study to evaluate if potential third-party vendors align with minimum requirements, desired functionalities, and the scope for future enhancements.
- Develop a functionality matrix that clearly outlines the capabilities and limitations of each vendor, facilitating informed decision-making.

#### **10.3 Cost Estimation and Financial Planning:**

- 10.3.1 Financial Projections for Portal Development:
  - **Basic Portal Costs:** Estimate the investment required for the initial development of a basic tournament entry portal.
  - **Mandatory Functionalities:** Calculate costs associated with integrating essential additional functionalities identified during the analysis phase.
- 10.3.2 **Future Enhancement Budgeting:** Project the financial implications of integrating advanced features and capabilities in subsequent phases.

#### 10.4 Decision-Making on Development Approach

- 10.4.1 **Evaluating Options:** 
  - **Third-Party Solution:** Assess if there is a suitable third-party vendor that can meet the requirements and expectations for the system.
  - In-House Development: Consider the feasibility, resources, and expertise

required for developing the system in-house.

10.4.2 **Informed Decision:** Based on the analysis, cost estimates, and strategic alignment, make a well-informed decision on whether to proceed with a third-party solution or to opt for in-house development.

# **10.5 Implementation Roadmap**

- **Phased Roll-Out Plan:** Develop a detailed implementation roadmap with clear milestones, timelines, and deliverables for each phase of the project.
- **Stakeholder Engagement:** Continuously engage with all relevant stakeholders throughout the development process for feedback, support, and alignment.
- **Risk Management:** Identify potential risks associated with each phase and devise mitigation strategies to ensure smooth project execution.

# **10.6 Continuous Monitoring and Evaluation**

- **Performance Tracking:** Establish mechanisms for ongoing monitoring of the project's progress against set benchmarks and goals.
- **Feedback Loops:** Implement regular feedback loops to gather insights from users and stakeholders, allowing for agile adjustments and improvements.

By adopting this phased approach, the project aims to create a robust, scalable, and user-centric Tournament Entry Portal that aligns with FIDE's strategic objectives and user needs.